

TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS

G. H. HURST

# LIBRARY







TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS



# TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS

A HANDBOOK

ON THE

*PREPARATION, PROPERTIES, AND ANALYSIS  
OF THE SOAPS AND OILS USED IN  
TEXTILE MANUFACTURING,  
DYEING, AND PRINTING*

BY

GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.

LECTURER ON DYEING AT THE LEEK AND MIDDLETON TECHNICAL SCHOOLS; MEMBER  
OF THE SOCIETY OF CHEMICAL INDUSTRY AND OF THE SOCIETY OF DYERS  
AND COLOURISTS; AUTHOR OF "SOAPS," "LUBRICATING OILS, FATS,  
AND GREASES," "COLOUR," ETC.

WITH NINE ILLUSTRATIONS

LONDON

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON

"THE OIL AND COLOUR TRADES JOURNAL" OFFICES

8 BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

---

CANADA: THE COPP CLARK CO. LTD., TORONTO  
UNITED STATES: D. VAN NOSTRAND CO., NEW YORK

1904

[All rights remain with Scott, Greenwood & Son]

X Res.

6681

H94



TS 1449  
1588  
1904

P R E F A C E



SOAPS and oils are very largely used in the manufacture of textile fabrics from cotton, wool, silk, and other fibrous materials, and in the arts of dyeing and printing those fabrics. It has been thought, therefore, that a small handbook which would describe the preparation, properties, uses, and analyses of these useful substances would be of use to every person concerned in their preparation and use; hence the appearance of this little book. In writing it, the author has kept in view the practical side of the subject, and tried to gather together that information which would be of most value in the practical application of the soaps and oils.

Those readers who may desire further information regarding the materials and methods of manufacture are referred to the author's large book on *Soaps*. As regards oil, there is one use of these bodies in the textile trades which is not referred to here, and that is in the lubrication of the machinery. This subject will be found dealt with in the author's book on *Lubricating Oils, Fats, and Greases*.

G. H. H.

CHEMICAL LABORATORY,  
22 BLACKFRIARS STREET,  
SALFORD, February 1904.

Gift of Mrs. Wengale in memory of Prof. W. M. ...  
Fall, 1954

SMTI LIBRARY



# CONTENTS



	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	v
SECTION I.—TEXTILE SOAPS—	
1. INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	1
2. METHODS OF MAKING SOAPS—	
<i>A.</i> HARD SOAP . . . . .	7
<i>B.</i> SOFT SOAP . . . . .	25
3. SPECIAL TEXTILE SOAPS—	
<i>A.</i> WOOL SOAPS . . . . .	32
<i>B.</i> CALICO PRINTERS' SOAP . . . . .	38
<i>C.</i> DYERS' SOAPS . . . . .	40
4. RELATION OF SOAP TO WATER FOR INDUSTRIAL PURPOSES	43
5. TREATING WASTE SOAP LIQUORS . . . . .	48
6. BOILED-OFF LIQUOR . . . . .	53
7. CALICO PRINTERS' AND DYERS' SOAP LIQUORS . . . . .	55
8. SOAP ANALYSIS . . . . .	56
9. FAT IN SOAP . . . . .	64
SECTION II.—ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE OILS AND FATS—	
TALLOW . . . . .	74
LARD . . . . .	80
BONE GREASE . . . . .	81

	PAGE
ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE OILS AND FATS— <i>continued.</i>	
TALLOW OIL . . . . .	83
LARD OIL . . . . .	83
VEGETABLE SOAP OILS AND FATS—	
PALM OIL . . . . .	84
PALM-NUT OR PALM-KERNEL OIL . . . . .	88
COCO-NUT OIL . . . . .	89
OLIVE OIL . . . . .	93
COTTON-SEED OIL . . . . .	96
LINSEED OIL . . . . .	100
CASTOR OIL . . . . .	104
CORN OIL . . . . .	106
WHALE OIL OR TRAIN OIL . . . . .	107
RAPE OIL . . . . .	108
SECTION III.—GLYCERINE . . . . .	110
SECTION IV.—TEXTILE OILS—	
A. WOOL OILS . . . . .	113
OLEINES. WOOL OILS . . . . .	127
OLEIC ACID . . . . .	133
BLENDED WOOL OILS . . . . .	135
OILS FOR COTTON-DYEING, PRINTING, AND FINISHING—	
B. COLOUR OIL . . . . .	137
C. TURKEY-RED OILS . . . . .	138
TURKEY-RED OIL. ALIZARINE OIL. OLEINE . . . . .	140
OXY-TURKEY-RED OILS . . . . .	152
SOLUBLE OIL . . . . .	152
ANALYSIS OF TURKEY-RED OIL . . . . .	153
FINISHERS' SOLUBLE OIL . . . . .	158
FINISHERS' SOAP SOFTENINGS . . . . .	159
TESTING AND ADULTERATION OF OILS . . . . .	161
INDEX . . . . .	191

# TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS



## SECTION I

### TEXTILE SOAPS

#### 1. INTRODUCTORY

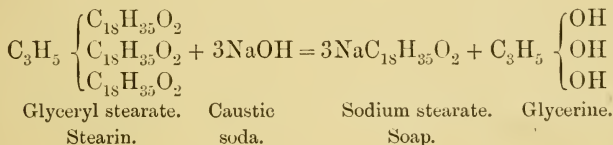
SOAP is very largely employed in every branch of the textile industries. In the silk industry, it has been used for centuries in the un gumming or boiling-off of the raw silk, and in many processes of silk-dyeing; in the woollen trades, it is used in the operations of milling, or fulling, and felting of woollen fabrics, and in the scouring and cleaning of wool. In the cotton trade, it is employed in a great variety of ways: in the dyeing and printing of cotton fabrics, in cotton-finishing, and, to a limited extent, in the bleaching and cleaning of cotton. In the working of linen, jute, hemp, China grass, etc., soap is used in several ways. The work that soap has to do, and the objects for which it is employed, in these industries vary very much; so that it is found that a soap which is the most suitable for scouring woollens, will not be suitable for use in calico-printing, or in boiling-off silk. The special features of the most suitable soaps for each of these processes are discussed later on.

There are two kinds of soap found in commerce, hard soap and soft soap, and both kinds are used in the textile trades.

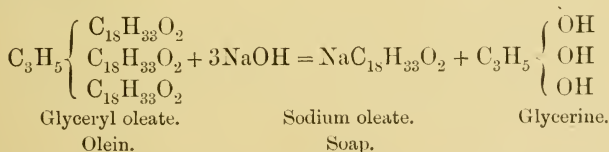
Soap is made from such fats and oils as tallow, lard, olive oil, palm oil, coco-nut oil, bone tallow, castor oil, etc.,—all of which are derived from the animal or the plant kingdom. There is a great similarity in the composition of these fatty bodies. They belong to the large group of chemical compounds known as salts, although they differ so markedly in appearance from typical members of the salt series like common salt, Epsom salts, copperas, bluestone, Glauber's salt, etc. Salts are formed essentially by the combination of two radicles together, one an acid radicle, the other a basic radicle; the characteristic features of each being neutralised, and a new compound of different properties being obtained. In the case of the fats and oils, these all have one basic radicle, which has received the name "glyceryl." There is, however, a great variety of acid radicles found in the oils; as a matter of fact, few oils contain less than two, while in others—coco-nut oil, palm-nut oil, and butter, for example—there is a much greater number present. It is a well-marked feature of chemical activities that bases vary much in degree of strength, and that a strong base will remove a weak base from its combinations; thus, for instance, if to a solution of copper sulphate one of caustic soda be added, the latter, being a stronger base, displaces the copper from its combinations with the sulphuric acid, and sodium sulphate is formed in solution and copper hydroxide precipitated out. And so with acids, a strong acid will displace a weaker acid—a property taken advantage of in the manufacture of acetic acid, hydrochloric acid, and nitric acid by the action of sulphuric acid, a stronger acid, on sodium acetate, sodium chloride, or sodium nitrate respectively. When oils and fats are boiled with a solution of caustic soda or caustic potash, both strong bases, there is an interchange of radicles; the soda or potash takes out the fatty acid or fatty acids from the

oil or fat, and the product thus obtained forms the familiar article soap,—hard soap if caustic soda is used, soft soap if caustic potash is employed. The basic radicle, glyceryl, is separated out in the form of the valuable compound glycerine. This operation of making soap is called “saponification,” and all oils which can thus be transformed into soap are called “saponifiable oils.”

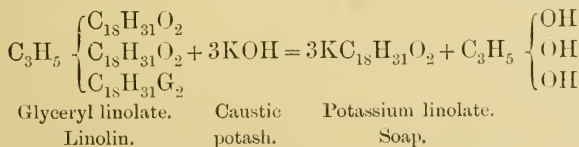
The fatty bodies, on account of their always yielding glycerine on being saponified, are called “glycerides,” and the action of the caustic soda or caustic potash—“the alkalies,” as they are called—on certain typical glycerides is shown in the following chemical equations:—



Stearin is the principal constituent of tallow and other animal fats.



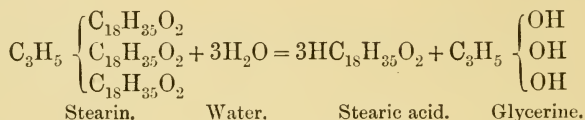
Olein is the principal constituent of olive oil and liquid oils of the vegetable kingdom.



Linolin is the principal constituent of linseed oil and drying oils in general.

The formulæ given for stearin, olein, and linolin are typical formulæ, and all the glycerides have a similar composition.

When the glycerides are subjected to the action of superheated steam, they undergo what is called "hydrolysis"—that is, they take up the elements of water, and the acids and the glycerine of the fat are separated, as is indicated by the chemical equation—



This property of the glycerides is taken advantage of in the commercial manufacture of stearic acid and glycerine.

The fats and oils used by the soap manufacturers are derived from both vegetable and animal sources; none, so far known, are obtained from the petroleum oils or paraffin shales. There is no very essential difference between an oil and a fat; it is purely a question of climate, or rather of temperature, as to whether a particular body makes its appearance in a solid form, as a fat, or liquid, as an oil, at the ordinary temperature of the place in which it is. Palm oil here is a fat, *i.e.* solid; in Africa it is an oil, *i.e.* liquid. Coco-nut oil in this country is a white solid; in India it is a watery-white liquid. Olive oil here is an oil; in Greenland it is a fat. That it is simply a question of temperature is proved by the fact that if tallow or palm oil or coco-nut oil be kept in a sufficiently warm place they are converted into liquids, while, on the other hand, by artificially cooling olive oil, or cotton-seed oil, or lard oil, they are solidified, and are then in no way distinguishable from a solid fat.

These few examples will suffice to show the relation between fats and oils, and in these papers, when these bodies are generally referred to, the term fat may be taken to include the oils, and *vice versâ*.



The oils and fats are characterised by being lighter than water, their specific gravity ranging from 0·878, which is that of sperm oil, the lightest of natural oils, to 0·965, that of castor oil. In water they are quite insoluble: on shaking up with it they form an emulsion in which the oil is distributed throughout the body of the water in the form of minute globules; on standing, the oil gradually separates out and rises to the surface. They impart a greasy stain to paper, causing it to become more or less transparent; and this stain is permanent. They are readily soluble in ether, chloroform, carbon bisulphide, turpentine, petroleum spirit, benzol; in alcohol their solubility varies very much. Castor oil is readily soluble, linseed oil is soluble in about ten times its volume of strong alcohol, while the solubility of tallow is but slight. A great deal depends upon the freedom of the oil from acidity, which increases its solubility in alcohol.

On being heated to 500° to 600° F., oils decompose, and under ordinary atmospheric pressure they cannot be distilled unchanged. At a reduced pressure and with the aid of superheated steam they may be distilled. The products of decomposition are rather variable, but include water, carbonic acid, acrolein, acetic acid, sebacic acid, etc.

The oils are compounds of the three elements, carbon (C), hydrogen (H), and oxygen (O), the proportions varying in different oils: for linseed oil these are—carbon, 77·440 per cent.; hydrogen, 11·10 per cent.; and oxygen, 11·50 per cent.

When boiled with caustic soda, caustic potash, or lime, they are decomposed and two bodies are formed, one glycerine, the other the familiar article soap. This operation is known as “saponification,” as has been shown above.

On exposure to air, all oils become more or less oxidised. Some, such as olive oil and lard oil, are but slightly affected,—these are known as the “non-drying oils”; while linseed oil and some other oils, on exposure to the air, gradually become hard—

“dry,” as it is called,—these are known as the “drying oils.” There is no hard or sharp line between these two classes of oils; and the transition is very gradual between, say, sperm and olive oils, which are types of “non-drying oils,” through cotton-seed oil and niger-seed oil, “partially drying oils,” to linseed oil and poppy-seed oils, types of the “drying oils.” This property of drying has a material influence on the uses to which the oils are put in practice: the non-drying oils find extensive use in lubricating machinery; the partially drying oils are used as food oils; while the drying oils are used primarily as painting oils. Even in soapmaking, the drying oils are the best for making soft soap, while the non-drying oils make the best hard soaps.

Two other kinds of oil are commonly distinguished in commerce; these only resemble the oils proper in their appearance. The essential oils are almost entirely derived from vegetable sources;—and it may be mentioned in passing that a plant may yield both an essential oil and an ordinary fat oil—to the essential oil it owes its characteristic odour and taste; the essential oil only exists in small quantities, while the fat oil may occur in large proportion. The essential oils vary in specific gravity very much; some are lighter, others are heavier, than water, in which some are slightly soluble; they are soluble in alcohol and other solvents, and as a rule they can be distilled without decomposition; alkalies have little or no action on them; they contain carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, but the proportion of this last element is less than in the fixed oils. Essential oils are used in soapmaking, to impart a perfume to soap.

The second class of oils referred to above are the so-called hydro-carbon or mineral oils derived from the Scotch paraffin shale and American or Russian petroleum. These oils are lighter than water, have an oily appearance, will give a permanent stain to paper; they are insoluble in water and alcohol,

and can be distilled without decomposition; are not acted on by caustic alkalies; and are composed only of carbon and hydrogen, whence they are called "hydro-carbon oils." These are not used in soapmaking, but find a most extensive use in lubricating machinery.

## 2. METHODS OF MAKING SOAPS.

### A. HARD SOAP.

The methods employed in the manufacture of soap of any kind may be divided into three groups—

1. Boiling the fats and alkalies together under ordinary atmospheric pressure in open boilers—the ordinary process of soap-boiling.
2. Boiling the fats and alkalies together under pressure in closed boilers.
3. By mixing the alkalies and fats at ordinary temperatures—the so-called cold process.

The first method is by far the oldest and most commonly employed. In this method the soap is boiled with a solution of the alkali (caustic soda for hard soaps, caustic potash for soft soaps), until it is saponified; then in the case of hard soaps salt is added, which throws out the soap in the form of curds, which are collected and allowed to set into the form with which the public is familiar. There is also obtained what is known as "spent lye," an aqueous liquor containing the salt used, any excess of alkali that may have been used, and also the glycerine which was formed during the process of saponification. Formerly this was thrown away, but now it is treated for the recovery of the glycerine it contains.

In the second method the fats and alkali are boiled together under pressure in a closed vessel or boiler, and when saponifica-

tion is complete the soap is set on one side to cool, and, when cold, it is ready for sale.

In the third method the fat is just melted and then mixed with the alkali in the form of a strong solution, the mixture being placed on one side for some time, to allow the saponification to become complete, when the soap is ready for use.

In both the second and third methods there is no salting out, while the glycerine that is formed remains in the soap.

Each of these three methods will be discussed in detail.

*Hard Soap.*—It is extremely difficult to attempt any classification of hard soaps; the varieties are numerous, and many are produced by simple modifications of the process of making and of the materials employed. Then, again, some kinds of soap—grain or curd soaps, for instance—can only be made by one process, the boiling process, and not by any other. It will therefore be best to describe in detail the processes employed in the manufacture of the various grades of industrial soaps, and indicate the various kinds of soap for which they are best adapted.

### 1. *Soapmaking by the Boiling Process.*

Probably ninety per cent. of the soap which is made in this country is made by the boiling process in open pans, such as are shown in Figs. 1 and 2, heated by fire or by steam, the latter being the most modern plan. In this method of boiling the fat and alkali are brought together in the presence of water in such proportions as experience has shown will enable them to make soap, but the quantities are not definitely proportioned one to the other. The boiling brings about the saponification of the fats and forms the soap, which can then be finished in any way that is desirable. There are three chief varieties of hard soap produced in this way, dependent upon certain modifications in the finishing operations; these are known as

“curd,” “fitted,” or, in America, “settled” and “run” soaps. These, of course, are independent of varieties of soaps produced by varying the materials used.

In starting a soap-boil it is advisable to see that the pan is quite clean, while the inside should be well whitewashed or limewashed, as this prevents the iron of the pan from affecting the soap in any way, and prevents its corrosion. Then a small quantity of weak lye, about 2° Tw., is run in, filling up the pan to about one-tenth of its depth; this is heated by means of the closed steam coil to near the boil, and then there is run in a portion of the fats which are to be saponified, this fat having been previously melted in separate tanks. The quantity is not of much consequence, but about one-third of the total charge is a fair proportion. There is then run in soda lye at 10° Tw. (a stronger lye than this should not be used). One of the difficulties in soap-boiling is to start the saponification of the fat; if the lye be too strong, this starting does not take place readily enough, and other difficulties are introduced. By using weak lye, however, there is little, if any, difficulty experienced, and about 15 gallons may be allowed to every 5 cwt. of tallow run into the pan. The steam is turned on to bring the mass to the boil. The material may rise up in the form of froth very considerably, this proceeding being known to soapmakers as “fobbing.” This occurs only at the starting of a boil, or when running in more fat or alkali: if it happen, the steam must be turned off, the mass of fob beaten down by the hand-paddle or beater, and the pan left to itself for a few hours, when the boiling may be resumed. It will probably be found that the boiling will now proceed very quietly and without further trouble, as during the time the pan has been standing the fat and alkali have been reacting and entering into combination with one another. It is this liability to fob that renders it undesirable that a soap-pan should be fully charged to start with. Sometimes there appears very little

difficulty in starting the saponification, at other times there appears great difficulty. Much will depend on the condition of the fat; if this be very neutral, then it will not be easy to start its saponifying; on the other hand, if it contain some free acid, this will at once enter into combination with the alkali and form soap, which, by increasing an emulsifying tendency of the fat, enables the alkali and fat to more thoroughly amalgamate together, and therefore facilitate the process of

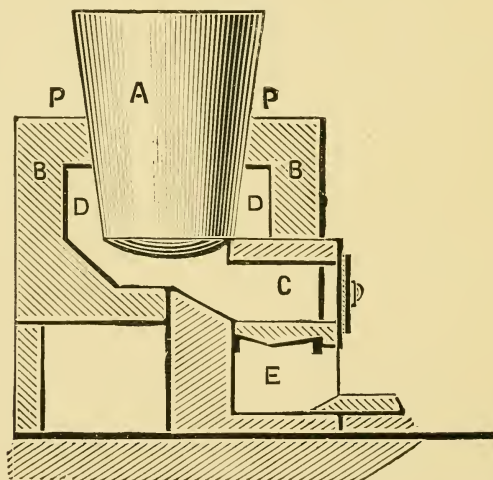


FIG. 1.—Fire-heated Soap-Pan.

soap formation. With a view of imitating this action, it is the custom of many soapmakers, and it is a custom worth following, to throw into the pan, on its being first charged, all the scraps of soap which they may have about; such scraps dissolving in the weak lye help forward the saponifying of the fat to a great extent. There are always plenty of soap scraps about that are produced in cutting the blocks of soap up into slabs and

bars ; these should always be placed on one side, and sent into the soap-boiling house for this particular purpose.

When the first lots of fat and lye appear to have been thoroughly amalgamated together, then there may be run in a ton of oil ; then—or better, simultaneously—lye ; this may now be used stronger, say  $17^{\circ}$  to  $18^{\circ}$  Tw. than was first employed, and of it 200 gallons will be required for one ton of fat.

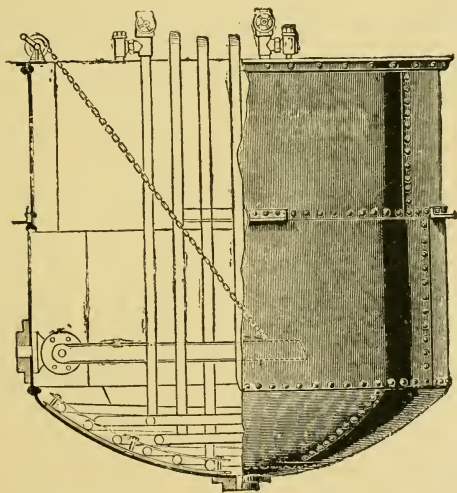


FIG. 2.—Steam-heated Soap-Pan.

This lot is now boiled up for two hours. Fobbing will rarely occur at this stage. At the end of the time given the rest of the charge may be run in and the boiling continued. It is advisable to keep it well stirred, so as to bring the fat and alkali into intimate union. If the boiling be done with open steam, then the steam itself passing through the soap is almost sufficient to do this. In this case, however, there will be some

considerable condensation of the steam, in the pan; this must be allowed for, and rather stronger alkali,  $23^{\circ}$  to  $25^{\circ}$  Tw., employed in the last stages. If a closed steam coil be employed, then the soap must be kept stirred by means of the hand-paddle or mechanical stirrers. At the end of the boil very little stirring will be required, the soap will boil up very nicely and gently in what are known as "roses," and this gentle boil is a sign that the end is approaching. Soap-boiling is one of those processes that cannot be taught by books, owing to the difficulty of describing all the changes in appearance of a charge of soap during the process of boiling it up. The length of time a pan of soap takes to finish depends entirely on the weight of soap being treated, and may vary from five hours for a small charge to twelve or fifteen hours for a large one. The end of the operation is ascertained by taking out samples from time to time by means of the paddle and examining them. It should have a firm consistency, be free from any oil or fat, which has only a faint biting sensation on the tongue, which would show that the alkali was in slight excess, as it should be. Then again the appearance of the soap is some guide; when properly saponified it will have a homogeneous and semi-transparent look, smooth and glossy, and fall off the paddle in clear flakes; on the other hand, if it be opaque in looks and rather granular in appearance, then it is an indication that there is either an excess of fat or an excess of alkali, which will be shown by the other tests previously alluded to. Sometimes there are signs that there are free alkali and free fat present in the soap-pan at the same time, which shows that the saponification of the fat has not been properly conducted; the remedy in such a case is to add some water and proceed with the boiling.

It may be stated here that, roughly, 100 lb. of fat require 100 lb. of lye at  $32^{\circ}$  Tw. to complete saponification; coco-nut oil takes about one-fourth more.

*Salting Out.*—The next operation is that of salting out, or, as



it is sometimes called, "graining," the soap; this is done by throwing into the pan either common salt or a strong brine liquor. This throws the soap out of solution in the form of grains or curds, and thus separates the soap from the water employed in the operation of boiling, and from the excess of alkali used, and from the glycerine formed during the process of saponification.

This property of salt, of throwing out the soap from the solution in which it exists in the soap-pan, depends upon the fact that while soap is soluble in water, yet it is insoluble in solutions of alkaline salts, and when, therefore, such is added to a solution of soap, the latter is thrown out of solution. Some soapmakers prefer to use brine, but ordinary common salt is commonly used. The salt is thrown into the pan in small quantities at a time, until the soap forms in small grains, and a quantity of lye is clearly visible when the paddle is placed in the soap and then lifted out. A very little practice soon shows the soapmaker when this point is reached. Care must, however, be taken not to add the salt in too large a quantity at a time, and to allow each portion to dissolve before adding another portion, otherwise there is a liability to get an excess of salt, and this is undesirable for two reasons: because it is not economical to use more material than is necessary to do the required work, and because excess of salt introduces difficulties to be overcome in subsequent operations. The soap in the pan loses its smoothness and transparency, becomes more opaque and grainy; the boiling also becomes rather irregular, and tends to occur in bursts, and sometimes there is a tendency to boil over.

When sufficient salt has been added, and the contents of the pan separate out on the paddle into a grainy soap and clear lye, the steam is shut off and the pan allowed to remain at rest for four to five hours, according to the size of the batch. It may be mentioned here that it is impossible to state definitely the

quantity of salt which may be required to salt out any given batch of soap. This will be found to vary, and is dependent upon the action of several factors—the strength of lye used in the saponification, whether there has been much or little condensation of water from the steam in the pan, whether any coco-nut oil or palm-nut oil has been used in making the soap; and as all these factors are liable to vary with every batch of soap, it is not possible to state any definite quantities of salt for salting out.

On standing for four or five hours the mass in the pan separates into two layers or portions, the upper one consisting of the soap, holding perhaps about 40 per cent. of water, while the lower layer is a liquid known as the “spent lye.” This is more or less dark in colour, according to the character of the fat used in making the soap; it contains any excess of caustic soda which may have been used, the salt added to separate out the soap, sodium carbonate, any impurities which may have been present in the original caustic soda and in the fat, together with the glycerine which has been formed during the saponification of the fat. This lye is now run off from the soap into storage tanks, so as to be ready for subsequent treatment, with a view to the recovery of the glycerine and salt it contains.

This concludes the first stage in the preparation of all soaps, and it is from this point that differences of treatment arise to produce various kinds of soap. The operation of soap-boiling requires to be conducted with care and attention, and every effort should be made to see that the boiling is complete. This makes a considerable demand on the skill and experience of the soapboiler. Too strong an alkali should not be used, for, as stated above, it would be difficult to start the saponification; and yet different fats will require different strengths of lye, or, will saponify with different strengths. Thus, while tallow, palm oil, cotton-seed oil, and some others will not work with

lye stronger than  $10^{\circ}$  to  $12^{\circ}$  Tw., coco-nut oil and palm-nut oil will take lye up to  $20^{\circ}$  Tw., saponifying best, in fact, with the strong lie. Linseed and olive oils usually work best with a lye of intermediate strength. Then, of course, some fats take more alkali than others, and this must be allowed for, or imperfect saponification will take place. A little excess of alkali should be used, but too much should be avoided, as such excess tends to retard saponification rather than assist it.

*Boiling on Strength or Clear Boiling.*—The soap from the salting-out operation is now run into the pan, and then a small quantity of caustic lye at  $20^{\circ}$  Tw. run in, and the soap boiled on this for three to four hours. During this boil the soap should remain open, and a clear lye always visible; if it should not thus present itself, then a little stronger lye should be added.

Some makers give a preliminary boil with a little water, and thereby close up the soap before they add the caustic to open it again, and there can be no doubt but that this is the preferable course. The object of this boil on strength is to complete the saponification, and to ensure that the soap is quite free from any unsaponified fat. For this purpose it is not advisable to use any stronger lye than is absolutely necessary for the purpose of just opening the soap; any excess is harmful rather than otherwise, as it tends to retard rather than assist the reaction, while the soap exhibits a tendency to be rather caustic. Some attention should be paid to this boil, as it has a material influence on the grain and quality of the finished soap.

After boiling from three to five hours, according to the size of the batch of soap being made, the steam is shut off, and the pan of soap covered up and left to settle; this takes from thirty-six hours to three days, according to the amount of soap in the pan. At the end of this time the contents of the pan will have divided into two portions; one of soap at the top,

the other of lye—"half-spent lye" it is called. This still contains some caustic soda, although possibly it may have a dark colour, especially if poor fats have been used in making the soap. It should be stored in a separate tank, and used in the first boil of a new batch of soap.

The soap is taken away from the lye by any convenient means, and placed in the frame (Fig. 3) to cool and set, which

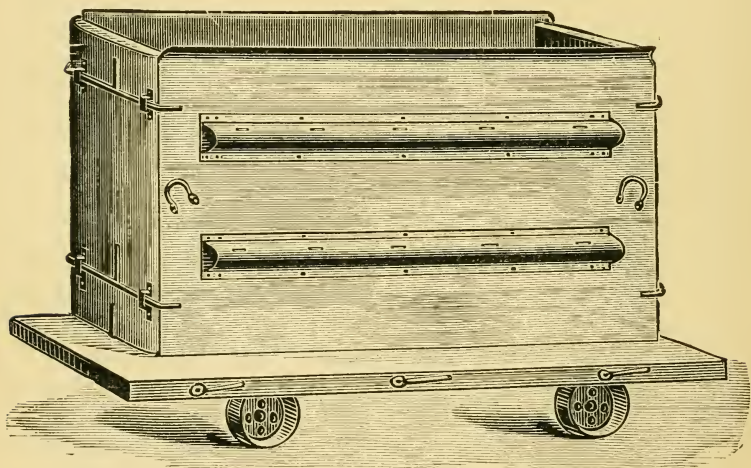


FIG. 3.—SOAP FRAME.

process will take from three days to a week, according to the season of the year and the relative coolness of the frame room.

The soap as so made is known as "curd soap." It may be made from a number of fats, but what is sold as "curd soap" is generally made from tallow.

Curd soap, while it possesses excellent detergent properties, is apt to be rather alkaline and sharp, and therefore does not suit all purposes, but does very well as a wool-scouring soap.

*Fitted Soap.*—In the manufacture of the best kinds of industrial soaps, the soap, after undergoing the process of boiling on strength and salting out, undergoes a further treatment, the extent of which may be varied according to special requirements and the ideas of the soapmaker. The first treatment consists in giving what is known as cleansing boil ; this is done by running the soap into a pan and adding some water and sending steam through ; there is then added a strong brine liquor in just sufficient amount to open the soap, and the boiling continued with either close or open steam for three to four hours, or even longer, according to the size of the batch of soap, after which the pan is allowed to settle for about twelve hours, when the soap will be found on the top and the brine below, this being run off when the soap is ready for the finishing operation. The cleansing boil helps in the completion of the saponification, and therefore to the production of a more perfect soap, while it tends to wash out any excess of alkali that the curd soap may hold from “boiling on strength,” and so make a more neutral soap. Some soapmakers will, with their best qualities, give even a second cleansing boil. The brine liquor may be used several times, according to the quality of the soap which is being made : if from good, clean fats, the liquor may be used several times ; if from poor, dirty fats, it cannot be used more than once or twice, as it becomes too highly charged with dirt to work satisfactorily.

The next proceeding is to close up the soap again. This is done by placing the soap in the pan, sprinkling on to it a little water, and heating by the close steam coil ; soon the soap loses its granular appearance, and becomes more transparent and homogeneous. When this happens, the boiling is discontinued and the pan allowed to cool, or the soap may be run into the frames to set, after which it is cut up into slabs and bars and tablets, ready for sale to the public.

Such is a general description of the ordinary process of soap-

boiling. It is subject to a little modification here and there, according to the fancy of the soapmaker, the kind of soap being made, and the fats used.

### 2. Soapmaking under Pressure.

During recent years there has been introduced a system of

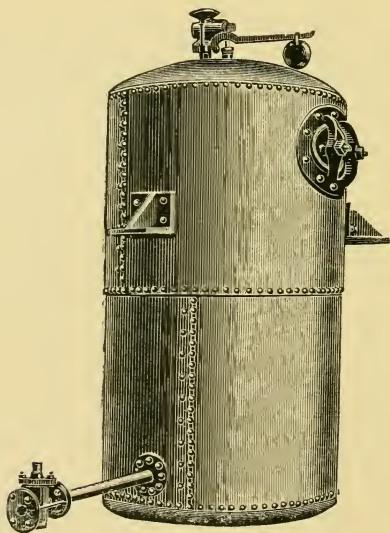


FIG. 4.—High-pressure Soapboiler.

making soap under pressure, using the fats and alkalies in proper equivalent proportions, such as will be given in connection with the cold process of soapmaking.

Messrs. W. Fraser & Co. make a high-pressure soapboiler, which is shown in Fig. 4. This boiler, practically an autoclave, is 4 feet in diameter and 8 feet high, and is made of steel boiler

plate, and is fitted with steel manhole and cover. The fittings usually attached are—charging pipe and valve, outlet pipe and valve, shown at the bottom of the illustration, thermometer tube and thermometer, a safety valve, which is usually set to blow off at 65 to 70 lb. pressure. The boiler is set in a brickwork fireplace, the fire playing on the bottom and a portion of the side. The brackets which are fitted on the side of the boiler are for supporting it on the brickwork.

These pans are worked by putting in the charge of fat, the right quantity of alkali and water, then heating and maintaining the pressure at 60 to 65 lb. for about four to five hours, when, as a rule, the saponification will be complete. The soap may next be run off into crutchers, and scent, etc., mixed with it, and then it is framed. The pan is ready for a new charge, which is run in immediately the old one is run off. Two batches of soap may thus be made in one pan in the course of a day. The weight of the charge is 1 ton.

The soap as made in this manner contains the whole of the ingredients added; there is no salting out, nor any lyes to run away. A great deal of the success of making soap by this high-pressure system depends upon employing the right proportion of alkali to fat and the proper quantity of water, as if too much be used the soap comes out too soft.

An analysis of a sample of soap made by the high-pressure system, by the author, showed it to contain—

- 20·79 per cent. of water.
- 5·65 per cent. of combined sodium.
- 36 per cent. of free alkali.
- 68·00 per cent. of combined fat.
- 20 per cent. of free fat.
- 5·09 per cent. of glycerine, saling bodies.

The sample was firm and of excellent quality, which shows that the high-pressure system can make as good soap as the low-

pressure system commonly in use, while a larger quantity of soap can be turned out in a given time.

### 3. *The Cold Process of Soapmaking.*

The process now to be considered is perhaps the simplest of all processes of making soap. It consists essentially in just heating the fats from which the soap is to be made sufficiently to melt them, then thoroughly mixing the melted fat with strong caustic lye, and then allowing the mixture to stand for a few days. The saponification of the fat proceeds, and at the end of the time stated is fairly complete, and the soap is made. The plant required is of a simple character, which is probably the inducement for the process having come into use.

The advantages of the "cold process" of soapmaking may thus be summed up:—It is very simple and easily carried out, requiring little labour and plant. Small quantities can be made by its means, which is not the case with the boiling process. The yield of soap from any given weight of fat is larger on account of the fact that all the material used in making the soap remains therein.

The disadvantages of the cold-process soap is that it is difficult, indeed impossible, to secure complete saponification of the whole of the fat used. There always is present in these soaps a small but variable quantity of free fat. Then they also contain a little free alkali, which causes the soap to work harsh and feel sharp to many skins. The presence of the free fat may sometimes lead to the soap becoming rancid. Cold-process soaps, when exposed to the air, are rather liable to sweat, and they dry up more easily than a boiled soap, so that it does not look well when old. It, however, dissolves more freely in water, and therefore lathers better; for hard waters it is better suited than a boiled soap.

As all the ingredients which are used remain in the soap, it



is evident that all the materials used must be of the best quality if a good grade of soap is to be made.

The fat most used and best adapted for making soap by this process is coco-nut oil; at one time it was considered that a cold-process soap could not be made without this oil forming fully one-half of the fats used. This, however, was at the time when highly causticised dyes were not made, and when caustics of high strength were unknown. Now, however, any kind of fat may be employed; but still coco-nut oil remains the chief fat employed. Its merit lies in the fact that it saponifies more readily with strong alkalies, such as have to be used, than any other fat. It yields a soap of a fine colour, it dissolves easily in cold water, and lathers very freely; on the other hand, it is apt to be harsh and to be sharp to delicate skins. Tallow is also very largely used for cold soaps, giving good white soaps of a firm texture, durable in use. Palm oil is also largely used, as is also castor oil. The soapmaker, indeed, may use any fat or admixture of fats when he wishes to produce a soap having desired properties.

Whatever fats are used, they should be of a good quality, free from any foreign matter, and quite fresh. It is advisable to subject them to a clarifying process before using them; this process may take the form of melting and allowing to settle, or the fat may be melted over a salt lye of about  $10^{\circ}$  Tw., in each case using only the clear fat which rises to the top. It is of great importance to use fresh fats and fats free from any great proportion of free fatty acids, as such conditions tend to the formation of soap which is not uniform in grain; the free fatty acids, when the alkali is mixed with the fat, immediately combining with it to form soap, which separates from the rest of the mass in the form of grains and curds, the presence of which destroys the homogeneous character of the soap. If it be suspected that any particular batch of fat contains too much free fatty acid, such may be removed by heating the fat to

just about its melting-point, then thoroughly mixing it with a little weak lye made from soda ash of about 2° to 3° Tw. strong; the alkali takes out the acid in the form of soap, which dissolves in lye. By keeping the mass at 130° to 150° F., the purified fat will rise to the top, and may be skimmed off and used. If any difficulty be experienced in separating the clear fat, a little salt brine added will remove it. It pays best to use only the best grades of fat.

The alkali used must be the highest grade of caustic that can be bought, either the 77 per cent. solid caustic soda or the 100° Tw. liquid caustic soda. The strength of lye most commonly used is 70° to 72° Tw., and containing 32 to 33 per cent. of actual caustic. The alkaline lye should be made with as soft a water as can be got. Low grades of caustic are not suitable for making soap by the cold process, inasmuch as the foreign salts and impurities they contain interfere with the complete saponification of the fat, and lead to the production of a soap which contains a larger proportion of free fat and free alkali. Then, again, if a very low grade of caustic were used, the impurities and salts would be liable to cause efflorescence on the surface, and spoil the appearance of the soap and of any wrappers in which it may be placed.

As regards the quantity of lye used and the proper strengths at which to use it, these necessarily vary with the kind of fat employed. Coco-nut oil, for instance, will require more lye, and a stronger one may be used than is the case with tallow.

It has been found that coco-nut oil and cotton oil saponify best with a lye of 72° Tw., while for tallow, palm oil, and most other fats the saponification proceeds best at 66° Tw. Too strong a lye should be avoided, as then the soap is made rather curdy in texture and the saponification is imperfect, the soap being hard and rough. It is better to use a lye one or two degrees weaker than stronger.

As regards the quantity of lye to be used, coco-nut oil, as before mentioned, takes the most, 100 lb. of the oil taking 50 lb. of lye at 72° Tw. made from 77 per cent. caustic soda. If a lower grade of caustic, say 70 per cent., be used, then the lye may be made stronger, say 77° Tw., and the same quantity employed.

Tallow, cotton oil, palm oil, and other fats do not require so much alkali; in their case it is best to use a lye of 66° Tw., and of this 50 lb. will be required for each 100 lb. of fat.

Using the fats and oils and lye in the proportions and strengths given, the finished soaps will contain about 25 per cent. of water, which is a fair average quantity. If a soap containing more water be desired, then a weaker lye may be used, while if a stronger soap is wanted, then a stronger lye must be employed.

It may again be stated that in the cold process the saponification is never complete; there is always in the finished soap a little free fat and a little free alkali. In making a toilet soap it is advisable to so proportion the fats and alkalies and the strength of the lye used as to leave as little free alkali as possible.

Having so far dealt with the materials and principles of the cold process of soapmaking, we may now proceed to describe in detail the operation itself.

*Working of the Cold Process.*—The fats and oils which are to be used are placed in a pan which ought to be fitted with a mixing arrangement. The fats are melted by heat in any convenient way, either by steam or fire. The temperature should not be too high, simply that which is sufficient to melt the fats. When coco-nut oil is used this will be 80° to 90° F., with a mixture of coco-nut oil and tallow about 100° F., with tallow and other grades from 110° to 120° F. When melted, lye is run in with constant stirring, which is continued until the mass of fat and lye begins to thicken and flow from a paddle in a uniform sluggish stream. The

temperature of the lye may be that of an average summer heat, 70° to 80° F. There is no need to heat or warm it in summer, but in winter it may be advisable to heat the lye to 80° F. before mixing it with the oil. After the lye and oil have been mixed and it begins to thicken, the soap mass is run into the frames, which are then covered over the sacking to keep the heat in as much as possible, and left for from three days to a week for the soap to fully form, after which it may be cut up in the usual way.

Although comparatively simple, yet, as with all processes of soapmaking, the cold process must be conducted with care and attention to some points of detail, or otherwise the product will not be quite right. Certain of these points have already been mentioned, and others may now be briefly referred to. To ensure a perfectly good product, the fats must be of good quality and without free fatty acid, or otherwise the soap is liable to turn out curdy, and not homogeneous, in structure.

The fats should be at the right temperature—not too cold, or otherwise they might set on adding the lye, and not too hot, or then the saponification of portions may take place too rapidly and a curdy or grainy soap be produced. The strength of the lye has already been dealt with, and does not need repeating here. The mixing or crutching of the fat and lye together should be thorough, but not too prolonged. It is not desirable that any actual saponification should take place during the mixing operation, but only in the frames afterwards. It is found in practice that if the crutching be too prolonged, then there is a tendency for the materials to separate out in the frames, and an indifferent quality of soap produced, with which only one thing can be done, and that is, to throw the materials into the soapboiler and boil them up.

The frames into which the soap is run from the crutchers should not be too large—those holding from 2 to 2½ cwt. are best,—and it is preferable that these should be low and broad

rather than narrow and high. The latter shape of frames retains the heat too long, and the soap does not set properly, while with the low flat frames covered with sacking the heat is retained, sufficient to ensure the proper saponification taking place. Too much heat should be avoided, as then there is a risk of oil separating out. In summer-time this is a risk specially to be guarded against.

*Hard White Soap.*—100 lb. good white tallow, 50 lb. caustic soda lye at 68° Tw.

*White Hard Soap.*—100 lb. coco-nut oil, 50 lb. caustic soda lye at 72° Tw.

*Hard Yellow Soap.*—50 lb. coco-nut oil, 30 lb. tallow, 20 lb. palm oil, 25 lb. castor oil, 63 lb. caustic soda lye at 70° Tw.

*Pale Soap.*—30 lb. coco-nut oil, 25 lb. tallow, 25 lb. palm oil, 25 lb. castor oil, 63 lb. caustic soda lye at 70° Tw.

The replacement of a portion of the soap lye, say one-fourth, by caustic potash of the same strength, much improves both the appearance and quality of these soaps. Soapmakers working from the above recipes can easily reckon out the respective quantities of soda and potash.

### B. SOFT SOAP.

Soft soap is a very important article in the soap trade; in some districts it is very extensively manufactured, while in others it is made in comparatively small quantities. The common soft soap is an amber-coloured to a reddish-brown material of the consistency of butter. It is much more soluble in water than the ordinary hard soap, and usually rather more alkaline in its properties. Its detergent and scouring properties are therefore greater. White soft soap is also made.

The alkali of soft soap is potash, although a little soda is also occasionally used in conjunction therewith, yet a soft soap cannot be made with soap only, in the same way as hard soaps

cannot be made with potash. Soft soaps owe their consistency to the fact of the greater solubility and hygroscopicity of potash soaps.

Soft soaps are much more simply made than hard soaps. The fats and oils are boiled with the alkali till the saponification is complete ; then the soap is made, and only needs to be run into firkins or tin canisters to be ready for sale. Simple, however, as it is in principle, soft soap is by no means easy to make. It is liable sometimes to go wrong in the boiling, and then it becomes a difficult matter to set it right.

The aim of the soft-soap maker should be to produce a clear, transparent soap, pale in colour, fairly free from odour, not too alkaline in character, and, in some cases, "figging" well. "Figging" in soft soap is a peculiar appearance, streaks of white usually found to strike from the sides of the vessel holding the soap inwards. Figging is usually considered to indicate a good quality of soft soap, but such is not really the case. A first-class soft soap can be made which will not fig, while, on the other hand, a poor soap can be produced which will fig. The figging is usually ascribed to the presence of stearate of soda in the soap, which crystallises out on the soap becoming cold, the crystals which are thereby formed giving rise to the figging. Figging is mostly met with in winter time. Unless the proportion of soda and stearic acid in the soap is very large, it does not occur in summer time.

The oils chiefly employed in making soft soaps are linseed oil, whale oil, and cotton-seed oil. These form the basis of the domestic soft soaps and common industrial soft soaps. Linseed oil is the one chiefly used, as it saponifies easily and gives a good, pale-coloured, transparent soap of a good consistency, fairly free from odour, and which keeps well. Whale or other fish oils are largely used, being cheap ; but they commonly produce dark-coloured though clear soaps. Much, however, depends on the quality of the oil which is used.

Fish-oil soaps have a fishy odour, which is not altogether objectionable. Cotton-seed oil makes a fairly good soft soap, pale in colour and transparent, figging well, which is not the case with the other two oils that have been named. Cotton oil soaps are, however, liable to acquire a rancid odour on keeping. The quality of the cotton-seed oil has a material influence on the quality of the soap. The best refined oils produce pale-coloured, transparent soaps, the commoner grades are apt to give darker-coloured soaps, which, owing to the large proportion of stearin they contain, are apt to fig strongly. Tallow is occasionally added in making soft soaps, to cause them to fig. Olive-oil soft soap is made for special purposes, such as silk-washing, etc., but olive oil, owing to its cost, is not commonly added to soft soaps. Sometimes nut oil is added.

When white soft soaps are required, as is sometimes the case for special purposes in the cotton trade, such must be made from good white tallow, coco-nut oil, and perhaps a small quantity of lard or other fat which yields white soaps, and particular attention must be paid to the quality of caustic potash used, which should be of a good white colour.

The caustic potash used in making soft soap was at one time prepared by the soapmaker, for his use, by causticising pearlsh (carbonate of potash) with quicklime. Now, however, it is the custom for the smaller makers to purchase it from the alkali-maker, ready prepared in iron drums.

When bought ready-made it is advisable to make an examination of it, to see that it is up to full strength, of good colour, fairly free from carbonate, and does not contain much, if any, oxide of iron. Much of the lower grades of caustic potash which are produced are defective in one or other of these points.

It is advisable that the soapmaker should prepare at least two potash lyes of different strengths, one of 14° Tw. and one of 38° Tw. Some makers provide lye of three strengths—

14° Tw., 23° Tw., and 38° Tw. Much, of course, depends on the construction of the soapboiler in which the soft soap is being made. If the boiler be one which is heated by fire only, then a weak lye of 14° Tw. may be used with advantage, while, if the boiler is fitted for steam-heating, with open or closed coils, then strong lyes may be used, say 23° Tw. and 30° Tw. Because, in the first case, as the boiling proceeds the lye gets stronger, while when working with the open steam the tendency is for it to get weaker. It is, however, by far the best plan to make the soap in pans fitted with open and close steam coils.

In making soft soap, only about one-half of the full charge of oil is run into the pan. By means of the closed steam coil or fire it is heated up, then a quantity of lye at 14° Tw., equal in volume to the oil, is run in and open steam sent in.

Run the lye in slowly, while the mixing of the lye and oil are carefully watched. Presently the oil will begin to saponify, then it must be well stirred, for it will begin to swell and rise in the pan. As soon as this is seen, more lye, equal to the first quantity in volume, may be run in and the boiling continued. Two things may take place in the early stages of soapmaking,—the oil and lye may boil over, or it may set into a stiff pasty mass. In either case trouble may be looked for. The remedy in the first case is to turn off steam and beat down the bubbling soap with the paddle; that in the second case consists in adding more lye and water, in boiling up, stirring well, and breaking up the mass as much as possible, but the process becomes tedious because it is difficult to break up the masses of soap, and they are not easily dissolved in the boiling soap in which they float. These troubles will be avoided if a quantity of finished soap be left in the pan from a preceding operation.

When the oil and lye have amalgamated, then the rest of the charge of oil may be run in and the further quantity of



alkali at 32° Tw. may be added. It may be mentioned here that, as a rule, 100 lb. of oil require 200 lb. of caustic potash lye at 32° Tw. to saponify, so that the soapmaker may base his calculations as to the quantity of alkali required on these data.

The soap is now boiled either by fire heat or the closed steam coil. Generally it is not needful to stir it, as the boiling keeps it in continual agitation ; it is a good plan now and again to send a sharp current of open steam through it, or to stir it up with an iron paddle, taking special note of any hard lumps of soap that may settle down at the bottom of the pan.

After a time the saponification of the oil will be complete, and the soap formed. To ascertain this, take out a sample of the soap with a spatula, place it on a piece of glass, and allow it to cool, when one of three things will be observed :—

1. The soap may be clear and translucent, which indicates that the soap is properly formed and only needs boiling down to the proper strength.

2. The spot of cold soap has a fatty border. In this case more lye is required, and the soapboiler should add some of either 23° Tw., or even as strong as 38° Tw., and boil up a little longer, when another sample may be drawn to see how the soap is progressing.

3. The spot of soap is of a grey colour, lustreless, and somewhat granular in appearance. In this case too much lye has been added, and to remedy this a quantity of oil which has been mixed with a weak lye should be added, and the soap boiled up further. The experienced soapmaker can tell by the manner of the soap boiling how it is progressing, and whether it wants more lye or oil.

The boiling should go on quietly, free from any jumping or bumping. The boiling down is carried on until a sample taken out and cooled on a glass plate shows the proper consistency and brightness of appearance.

Some makers add a little carbonate of potash, which promotes the production of the brightness, but too much must not be added, or the soap will become thin, and a whiteness will form on it. Too much lye produces the same defect. A little experience coupled with the habit of careful observation will soon enable the soapmaker to tell when he has got his boiling of soft soap quite right.

When finished the soap is run into the firkins or other packages to cool, when it is ready for sale.

Linseed oil yields a soap of a dark amber colour, with a pleasant odour.

Whale oil yields a dark reddish soap, varying somewhat in colour according to the quality of the soap used, but always having a fishy smell. Other fish oils may be used with a similar result.

Cotton-seed oil yields a soap varying from golden to an amber colour, according to the degree of refinement of the oil. Freshly made cotton-oil soaps are free from odour, but on being kept are rather apt to become rancid and develop an odour.

Olive oil yields a fine soap, varying from amber to greenish in hue, according to the grade of the oil used. Lard gives a fine white soap, not so stiff as a tallow soap. Hemp-seed oil gives a green-coloured soap. Coco-nut oil gives a fine white soap. Tallow gives a stiff soap, apt to fig somewhat.

The colour of the finished soap much depends on the care and attention given to the soap during the process of making, and also on the manner of heating the soap-pan. There is no doubt but that a fire-heated pan produces a darker soap than a steam-heated pan, therefore the latter form of pan is to be preferred.

Sometimes figging is brought about by using a little soda along with the potash, as, for instance, in the following recipe:—1000 lb. of oil is boiled with 535 lb. caustic potash lye at 32° Tw., to start the saponification. Then there is added

150 lb. potash lye at  $42^{\circ}$  Tw., and 470 lb. caustic soda lye at  $32^{\circ}$  Tw.

The finished soft soap is usually from  $2\frac{1}{4}$  to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  times the weight of the oil used. Good soft soap should contain 42.5 per cent. of fat, with 10 per cent. of potash, and 47.5 per cent. of water; some samples have as low as 40 per cent. of fat, while others have as much as 50 per cent. of fat.

Rosin makes a good cheapening agent for soft soaps, owing to its making a soap having good detergent properties. When using rosin it is a good plan to saponify it by itself, and then add it to the soap made from the other oils. Some makers employ soda to convert the rosin into soap, in which case the rosin is melted over water in a steam-jacketed pan, while in another pan ordinary soda crystals are dissolved in a small quantity of water. The proportions are 56 lb. of soda crystals to 112 lb. of rosin. The soda liquor is added to the rosin in small quantities at a time, waiting until all effervescence ceases before adding each succeeding quantity of soda. After all is added, the soap is boiled up for a short time to finish the saponification. When this is completed the soap is run into the pan of soft soap.

Should the colour of the finished soap be a matter of importance, and as rosin of the usual run of grades produces darkish-coloured soap, then an improvement may be effected by either using a better grade of rosin, or purifying it by the following process:—The rosin is saponified by soap, as described above, then the rosin soap is salted out by the addition of ordinary salt, and time allowed for the soap to settle out. Then the lye is run off, and with it a large proportion of the colouring matter of the rosin. The rosin soap thus purified may be added to the soft soap.

The proportion of rosin which may be added may be one-seventh to one-tenth that of the other oils and fats used.

## 3. SPECIAL TEXTILE SOAPS.

## A. WOOL SOAPS.

In the woollen trades, soap is much used in at least three distinct stages of the manufacture of woollen cloths, viz.—

1st. Scouring Raw Wool.

2nd. Scouring Wool Yarns and Cloths.

3rd. Milling or Fulling Woollen Cloths.

1st. *Scouring Raw Wool*.—The wool on the sheep's back is very greasy and dirty, and before it can be spun or woven it is necessary to remove this grease and dirt, which is effected by treating the wool in washing liquors containing soda and soap, although the practice of wool scourers varies very much, some using alkalies only, others a mixture of soda and soap.

As to the action of soap, its general application for washing and scouring purposes is undoubtedly due to its property of easily penetrating within the fibre and coming into intimate contact with the fibre, of easily removing the fat by emulsifying it, and consequently giving the water a chance of washing it off the fibre. The old view, due to Chevreul, that soap was decomposed by cold water into free caustic alkali and an acid salt, which latter is deposited on the fibre, preventing the dirt from settling down again on it, attributed the scouring, washing, and emulsifying property of soap to the dilute solution of the caustic alkali. This view, however, was an erroneous one, since a very dilute solution of caustic alkali could not replace soap, and for the further reason that a hot and clear soap solution (when no hydrolytic action has taken place to all appearances) cleanses far better than a cold one.

A better explanation, based upon experiment, had been suggested by Rotondi, who had shown that soap is split up into two salts, viz. a basic salt, which remained in solution,

and an acid salt, which settles down on cooling. The alkaline salt, at a higher temperature, being able to dissolve the acid salt, a clear solution is obtained directly by dissolving soap in warm water. The detergent property of soap may still be considered as due to the alkaline salt only, whereas the acid salt may simply fulfil the function of depositing itself on to the fibre and preventing the dirt from settling down again on it.

The best soap for scouring wool is one that is neutral, not containing any free caustic alkali or unsaponified fat, and free from rosin, mineral oil, or other unsaponifiable body, and containing no filling of any kind.

In the scouring of the raw wool, any soap containing any great excess of free caustic alkali would act most injuriously on the wool, destroying its surface by raising the scales and taking away the lustre. The deleterious action of free alkali would rapidly increase with a rise in the temperature of the wash water. Although for lower classes of wool soaps containing sodium carbonate, or even a dilute solution of sodium carbonate, might be permissible, still for the very finest wool a neutral soap, preferably a neutral potash soap, should be used.

A soap much used for this purpose is a grey, mottled soap, made from bone tallow, cotton oil, and other fats, usually of very good quality. The following are some analyses of such soaps made by the writer:—

Combined fat	.	.	62·25	64·68	48·28
Free fat	.	.	·34	·51	1·54
Combined alkali	.	.	6·15	7·23	4·66
Free alkali	.	.	·42	·32	1·92
Water	.	.	30·17	26·60	30·44
Salts	.	.	·67	·56	4·98

The last has rather too much free alkali.

In these analyses the free alkali has been calculated as caustic soda (NaOH), the combined alkali as sodium (Na.).

Cotton-seed oil soaps are also much used; these are imported from America, and are cheap, and are found fairly efficient.

Such a soap contains—

Combined fat	. . . . .	63·24
Free fat	. . . . .	·67
Combined alkali	. . . . .	6·81
Free alkali	. . . . .	·45
Water	. . . . .	27·94
Salts	. . . . .	·89

French and Italian made green olive-oil soaps are also used. These soaps are sold as containing 62 per cent. of fatty matter. An analysis of two samples of this kind of soap showed them to contain—

Combined fat	. . . 59·91	63·74
Free fat	. . . ·36	1·01
Combined alkali	. . . 5·19	5·38
Free alkali	. . . ·44	1·04
Water	. . . . 33·86	27·45
Salts	. . . . ·24	

These olive-oil soaps work well, although somewhat expensive.

Soft soaps are more expensive than hard soaps on account of having to be made with caustic potash, but they agree well with the wool fibre. Such soaps made from olive oil, cotton oil, or lard oil, give very good results. A good, well-made soft soap will contain—

Fatty matter	. . . . .	45·3
Combined alkali	. . . . .	6·8
Free alkali	. . . . .	0·6
Water and glycerine	. . . . .	47·3

The reason why soft soaps suit wool better, leaving it with a softer feel and a more silky lustre than hard soaps do, has not yet been definitely settled. Some authorities are inclined to think the glycerine which all soft soaps contain has some influence, but that is doubtful, for the quantity, only about 4 per cent., seems too small to exert any marked effect.

It is worth bearing in mind that raw wool contains naturally some soap, and that the wool fat possesses considerable emulsifying properties, thus making it easy to remove from the fibre. The following analysis of raw wool will give some idea of its composition :—

Water	.	.	.	.	.	.	23·48
Soap matter	.	.	.	.	.	.	21·13
Wool fat	.	.	.	.	.	.	9·26
Wool fibre	.	.	.	.	.	.	43·20
Dirt	.	.	.	.	.	.	2·93

The soap matter is sometimes called wool perspiration, suint, or yolk, and is soluble in water.

The wool fat consists largely of a substance known as cholesterol, to the extent of perhaps 7 per cent. of the raw wool, the rest being saponifiable fats. Cholesterol being neutral and unsaponifiable.

One feature is that it is capable of mechanically combining with water. It forms then the substance known as lanolin.

*2nd. Wool, Yarn, and Cloth-Scouring Soaps.*—After being cleansed from the grease and dirt it contains, wool is oiled preparatory to spinning (see “Wool Oils”), and after having been spun into yarns and woven into cloths, this oil must be got out again. This is generally effected by boiling in alkaline solutions with or without soap. Such soaps may be the same as those already described as being used in wool-washing. Really, much would depend on the character of the oil used on the wool. If this be of an acid character, being

composed wholly or partially of oleic acid, then the soap may contain an excess of free alkali, either in the form of caustic soda or carbonate of soda, for this excess would be practically neutralised at once when in use by the oleic acid.

The soap may also be supplemented in the scouring liquors by the use of sodium carbonate. When the oil consists chiefly of a fatty oil it will be found best to use a neutral soap and to depend largely on the emulsifying properties of this soap. Soft soaps are here most serviceable, and the addition of a little caustic potash would facilitate the extraction of the oil.

*3rd. Wool-Milling Soaps.* — Lastly, soaps are used in the milling or fulling of woollen cloths after dyeing. The soap used for this purpose should be one that is easily soluble in water, quite free from any free alkali or free fat. The freedom from alkali is necessary in order to secure that the colour of the dyed goods should not undergo any material change of tone or be caused to run, which might happen if the soap were alkaline in character, and further, that the wool fibre be left soft and supple, and firm in feel. The best soaps for this purpose are soft soaps, thoroughly well made from olive, cotton, or other liquid oils, or, failing these, hard soaps made from the same oils. Tallow and palm-oil soaps, while good in some respects, are not sufficiently soluble to be useful alone, but can be so used if mixed with oil soaps. Cotton-seed oil soap has often a disagreeable smell, which develops on standing. Also, unless made from well-refined oil, it is apt to contain colouring matters and resinifying bodies which tend to impart yellow stains to cloth.

Coco-nut and palm-nut oils make good white soaps, which are more freely soluble in water than other soaps, and suit industrial waters much better. They are apt to turn slightly rancid. They are much used in conjunction with tallow in making white curd soaps.

It has been proposed to use, as a substitute for the ordinary



soaps in the milling of woollen goods, a preparation analogous to Turkey-red oil obtained in the following manner. To a quantity of commercial oleic acid (oleine), contained in a high cask, concentrated sulphuric acid (66° B.) is added, in small portions at a time, during ten to twelve hours, the mixture being well agitated and the temperature kept below 40° C. until the dark brown, viscous liquid, when shaken up with cold water in a test-tube, gives a clear solution, which on standing may develop a slight turbidity, but must not separate out any layer of oil. The contents of the cask are then run off into another vessel with an inclined bottom, containing a concentrated solution of Glauber's salt, well mixed, and then allowed to stand for twenty-four hours.

The salt solution is run from below the oily layer, and after again standing and separating from the small amount of oil, it may be employed in dyeing, as a Glauber's salt and sulphuric acid solution.

The oil, "sulpho-oleic acid," is now ready for use. Its characteristic properties are, solubility in water, and its acid reaction.

The strongly acid reaction may be corrected by partial neutralisation with alkalis, while for milling goods dyed with the woods, indigo or alizarine, the sulphonated olein is exactly neutralised in dilute solution with soda or ammonia.

For milling goods dyed with a colour not sensitive to alkalis, for washing acid-milled goods, for the removal of tannic acid, etc., the turbidity first produced disappears and an amber-coloured liquor is obtained. The sulphated oil will mix with other soaps, but, being acid, it of course liberates their fatty acid.

Although the preparation of this sulphonated oleine is somewhat more complicated than that of ordinary soap, the advantages which it presents over ordinary soap in its solubility in both acid and alkaline solution and in water, and

the other properties described, more than compensate for the additional trouble ; also, less of it is required.

### B. CALICO PRINTERS' SOAP.

Calico printers use soap to a considerable extent in the final operations of washing and clearing the printed cloths. The soap is made into a liquor of a strength of approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. soap to 50 gallons of water ; some printers will use a stronger liquor, others a weaker liquor. Then the dye-stuffs with which the cotton cloths have been printed have some influence. Thus alizarine and alizarine colours in general require a stronger soap liquor than do basic dyes, like methyl violet or methylene blue. Mordant dyes, like alizarine yellow, chrome red, etc., take a medium strength of soap liquor.

The function of the soap is not thoroughly understood. No doubt it plays several parts, which will vary according to the dye or dyes that have been printed on the cotton. In all cases it has a clearing action on the gum or starch thickening used in the composition of the printing pastes, facilitating the solution of these, and therefore their removal from the cloth. In the case of alizarine and mordant dyes in general it has a decidedly brightening and fixing action. Probably this is brought about by a removal of excess of dyestuff that has not entered into combination with the mordant, thus helping to brighten the colour. Then the fatty matter of the soap may enter into combination with the mordant, and thus tend to fix it on the cloth while also bringing about at the same time a more complete combination of mordant and dye ; a triple compound of fat, mordant, and dye being formed as a kind of lake pigment which is fast and bright.

In the case of basic dyes probably the soap may remove traces of dye which has not properly entered into combination with the tannin-antimony mordant used, and so tend to make

the finished print faster to washing. Possibly also some of the fatty matter of the soap may enter into combination with the antimony, etc., and help to render it more insoluble, and in that way printed fabrics may be got which are faster to washing than would otherwise be the case.

Soaps which are best adapted for treating printed calicoes and other fabrics should be easily soluble in water, and therefore oil soaps are best. They should be quite neutral, as any free alkali would be liable to change the tints of some colours and make others run, which are objectionable features. They must be such as do not leave any objectionable odour. Olive-oil soaps, or, as they are sometimes called, Marseilles soaps, are the most generally used for the purpose. These have generally a green colour, being made from the cruder green grades of olive oil. They are made to contain 62 to 64 per cent. of oil, with a corresponding proportion of alkali and water. A sample of such a soap examined by the author contained—

Water . . . . .	27·52
Free alkali . . . . .	·76
Combined alkali . . . . .	5·52
Free fat . . . . .	1·01
Combined fat . . . . .	63·81
Salts . . . . .	1·38

Olive-oil soaps are fairly soluble, and leave no unpleasant odour behind them. Palm-oil soaps also work well; they are not so soluble as olive-oil soaps; they have a pleasant odour, rather characteristic, and they do not go rancid. Tallow soaps have been and are often used, but they lack solubility, and have some tendency to go rancid, hence their use is not advisable.

The question of solubility of the soaps used with calico prints is not an unimportant one, for the more soluble the soap the more fluid is the liquor it makes, and the more easily will

it penetrate into the fabric as the latter passes through the soap liquor. The best and the most easily soluble soaps would be, of course, neutral potash soft soaps, and such are even used by some calico printers for their best and most expensive prints.

Calico printers' soaps should be quite free from fillings of any kind. Some of them may contain 1 to 2 per cent. of common salt or sodium sulphate, the presence of which is of no practical moment, and cannot always be avoided.

While hard soaps may be used for soaping cotton, silk, and half-silk fabric, yet for soaping woollen and half-woollen (delaines) cloths, it is preferable to employ soft potash soaps, for these tend to more thoroughly preserve the lustre and pliability of the wool fibre. Such soaps must be quite neutral, and contain no free alkali or free fat.

### C. DYERS' SOAPS.

Soap is used to a fairly considerable extent in the dyeing of cotton and silk goods, rarely, if at all, in the dyeing of wool fabrics. In the dyeing of many direct colours, like Congo red, benzopurpurine, etc., soap is frequently used to the extent of 3 to 3½ pounds per cwt. of cotton which is dyed. Almost any good, well-made soap will answer here.

The Turkey red, alizarine red, and Para red dyer uses soap after dyeing his cotton goods. The object is to bring about a brightening effect on the colour, while there is no doubt the operation tends to fix the colour on the cotton better. The soap effects these objects by first removing any excess of dye-stuff from the cotton which has not been united with the mordant that was first fixed on the cotton, and which excess of dyestuff, if left in, would dull the colour, and might subsequently give rise to stains. Secondly, there is no doubt but that the soap has a tendency to enter into combination with the dyestuff on the one hand and the mordant on the other, so

that a triple combination of soap, dye, and mordant is fixed on the cotton, which is faster and brighter than a simple combination of dye and mordant.

The soaping is generally effected by working or passing the dyed goods through a soap liquor of a strength of 2 lb. per 50 gallons of water at about 150° F.

The best soap for this purpose is the olive-oil soap already referred to under "Calico Printers' Soaps." Palm-oil soap may also be used. It is desirable that the soap which is used should be neutral, fairly soluble in water, pleasant in odour, and not liable to turn rancid. Almost any kind of soap fulfilling these conditions is available. The soaps mentioned under the head of "Calico Printers' Soaps" are useful for this work.

*Silk Soaps.*—Soap has been used from very early times in the process of boiling off or degumming silk. The silk fibre, as it is spun by the silkworm, is a long, cylindrical fibre formed of two portions—an inner portion, or the silk fibre proper, named "fibroin," and an outer portion, constituting 20 to 30 per cent. of the total fibre, called the "gum" or "glue," technically "sericin." The fibroin is a lustrous, soft fibre, but the coating of sericin dulls this lustre and imparts a harsh feel. To obtain, therefore, the full lustre of the silk, the outer coating of sericin, or gum, must be removed, and this is universally effected by two or three successive boilings in a solution of soap. Generally the first operation is carried on at a temperature of 190° F. to 200° F.; there is used about 3 lb. of soap to 10 lb. of silk, with 25 to 30 gallons of water. This liquor causes the silk to swell up, then the gum begins to dissolve away. This first operation is generally known as "stripping," or by the French term "*de gommage*." The second operation consists in using a weaker soap liquor, 1 lb. in 30 gallons of water to each 10 lb. of silk, and at from 200° to 210° F. It is called "boiling off"; the whole of the gum is

removed, leaving the silk quite clean, lustrous, and supple. The used soap liquor is known as "boiled-off liquor," and is used in the dyeing of the silk.

Soaps adapted for boiling off silk should be easily soluble in water, for fluidity means easy penetration into the substance of the silk fabric, and also easier washing out of the silk afterwards. Further, it should be free from colour, so that it will not lead to the silk becoming stained, and it should not be liable to become rancid, and so impart an unpleasant odour to the silk.

It is not necessary that the soap should be quite neutral; a slight degree of alkalinity is rather of advantage, for the silk gum is rather more soluble in alkaline solutions than in neutral solutions; but an excess of free alkali in the soap should be avoided, particularly if that free alkali is present in the form of caustic soda, for this may affect the fibroin of the silk, making it hard and dull.

The best soap for silk is a soft soap made from good olive oil, lard oil, or nut oil, for such soaps are easily soluble and pleasant in odour. Hard soaps made from the same oils, particularly the olive-oil soap, are generally used, for they are cheaper than soft soap. Palm-oil soap, either hard or soft, does well, but is not so soluble as an olive-oil soap.

Tallow soaps are not suitable, and should not be used. Cotton-oil soaps are apt to be coloured, while they go rancid. Palm-nut oil and coco-nut oil soaps are excellent as regards being soluble and free from colour, but they have a tendency to become rancid, which is rather objectionable. Castor oil forms a very soluble soap, but the odour is rather objectionable. Soaps made from oleic acid are very good, being easily soluble and free from odour.

Should the silkworker prefer to use an alkaline soap, it is better to buy a neutral soap from the soap manufacturer and add a little potassium carbonate himself, as he will then know

what he is working with. The use and treatment of the old soap or boiled-off liquors will be dealt with later on.

Soap is frequently used in the dyeing of silk, sometimes by itself, but more often in conjunction with acetic or sulphuric acid. Any good, well-made soap will answer for this purpose; one of the chief requirements is that the soap shall be made from fats that will not become rancid, for the silk takes up a great deal of the soap liquor, and if acid has been used in the bath, the fatty matter of the soap is present largely in the free or acid condition, and it is difficult to eliminate this from the silk. The writer has handled dyed silks which had a strong odour due to the use of soap made from fats that have turned rancid. A good olive-oil or palm-oil soap is very good for dyeing silk, or an oleic acid soap may be used.

#### 4. RELATION OF SOAP TO WATER FOR INDUSTRIAL PURPOSES.

In the various operations of wool washing, scouring, and milling; in the boiling-off of silk; dyeing silk and cotton; soaping cotton prints and dyed cotton goods, etc. etc., water is always used in conjunction with the soap, and it exercises a marked influence on the use of the latter article—first, on account of the varying degrees of solubility of the various soaps in the water; secondly, and much more important, by reason of the impurities natural waters contain, as it is with natural waters that the users of the soaps have to work. Pure water, such, for instance, as clean rain-water and water condensed from steam, beyond exerting a solvent action on soap has no other deleterious effect.

There is no doubt that water has some action upon soap, as when soap is boiled with a large quantity of water it dissolves to a perfectly clear solution, but on cooling this becomes more or less turbid. Another feature which must be noticed is that

there is an increase in the alkalinity of the soap when it is dissolved in cold water: this can be shown by dissolving a piece of soap in alcohol, adding a few drops of phenol-phthalein solution and allowing the alkali solution to set in a jar; on pouring water into the jar the soap gradually becomes dissolved, and the solution acquires a reddish tint, showing the production of free alkali.

Messrs. Wright & Thompson have conducted a series of experiments upon this subject, the action of water on soap, and they have determined the amount of hydrolysis which occurs by using various quantities of water. Their results are given in the following table:—

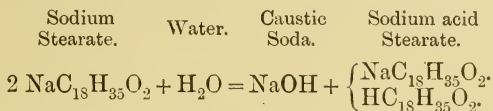
HYDROLYSIS BROUGHT ABOUT BY  $x$  MOLECULES OF WATER.

Soap made from	Mean Molecular Weight.	$x=150$	$x=250$	$x=500$	$x=1000$	$x=2000$
Pure stearic acid .	284	0·7	1·0	1·7	2·6	3·55
Nearly pure palmitic acid . . . .	256	1·45	1·9	2·6	3·15	3·75
Crude lauric acid (coco-nut oil) .	195	3·75	4·5	5·4	6·45	7·1
Pure oleic acid .	282	1·85	2·6	3·8	5·2	6·65
Crudericinoleic acid	294	1·55	2·2	3·0	3·8	4·3
Chiefly stearic, palmitic, and oleic acids (palm- oil tallow soap) .	271	1·1	1·55	2·6	4·1	5·3
Chiefly tallow and rosin (primrose) .	280	1·5	2·25	3·1	4·2	5·3
Cotton seed . .	250	2·25	3·0	5·0	7·5	9·5

The figures in this table are the quantities in per cent. of the alkali in the soap. It is to be noted that a tallow soap is less hydrolysed than a palm-oil soap, and much less than a coco-nut-oil soap, while a cotton-oil soap is more hydrolysed than any other kind.



The reaction which takes place may perhaps be expressed in the following equations :—



But the user of soap has to deal with other waters than the two named in order to carry out the industrial operations in which he is engaged, and such waters are not pure, the degree of impurity varying very considerably in water from different localities.

The ultimate source of all natural waters is rain, and when rain falls on the ground three things may occur. Part may pass back again into the atmosphere in the form of vapour, part will run off the ground into the nearest brook or river, and part, perhaps the largest, will soak into the ground, perhaps to re-appear at some other place in a well or a spring. What actually happens depends entirely on the character of the ground on which the rain falls; if it be porous, then the water will readily soak into and through it, but if it be hard and impervious, then most will run off.

Water possesses considerable solvent properties, no other substance more so, therefore when the water soaks into the ground it dissolves out some of the constituents of the rocks through which it passes, how much and of what kind depending entirely on the character of the rocks or soil through which the water passes.

Thus limestone and marly rocks contain more soluble constituents than slaty and granite rocks, hence waters from the latter are purer than from the former. Speaking generally, there are four substances commonly found in waters; the carbonates of calcium and magnesium, and the sulphates of the same two metals. Salt (chloride of sodium) is very frequent;

oxide of iron is occasionally found. The following table gives the analysis of some industrial waters such as are frequently in use in steam-boilers, by bleachers and dyers, etc. :—

	River Water.	Well Water.	Brook Water.	Well Water.	River Water.
Calcium carbonate .	8·74	9·19	2·06	8·3	16·39
Magnesium carbonate	2·78	1·4	·94	2·82	·31
Calcium sulphate .	3·26	12·17	47·34	40·61	4·3
Magnesium sulphate	...	7·05	5·7	22·25	1·28
Sodium sulphate .	1·44	13·69	9·98	2·65	...
Sodium chloride .	2·72	6·94	6·77	6·35	3·05
Silica . . . . .	·43	·62	·62	·84	·42
<hr/>					
Total solids .	19·37	51·06	73·41	83·86	25·75

All grains per gallon.

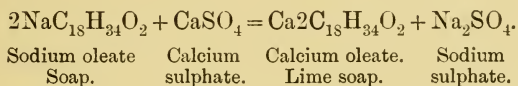
The carbonates of calcium and magnesium impart to the water the property of temporary hardness, that is, the hardness will disappear on boiling. This is because they are kept in solution by means of the carbonic acid gas, which all natural waters contain, in the form of soluble acid carbonates. When the water is boiled, the carbonic acid is driven off and the carbonates are precipitated out as normal carbonates, which are not soluble in pure water, and the water is softened thereby.

The sulphates of calcium and magnesium impart the property of permanent hardness to water, and cannot be removed by boiling.

Unfortunately for users of water, the calcium and magnesium compounds present in the water react with soap, giving rise to the formation of insoluble lime and magnesium soaps that form curdy masses floating in the water. These insoluble lime and magnesium soaps are of no value for any cleansing purposes, and the amount of ordinary soap that is required for their formation

is in effect rendered valueless from a cleansing point of view. It follows that the less of these calcium and magnesium carbonates and sulphates there is present in the water, the less soap is consumed to react with them, and the better is the water for the practical use.

The reaction which takes place between the two, for example, calcium sulphate and soap, is represented in the following equation :—



This equation has a quantitative value, as it indicates the proportions of the compounds which react with one another, and in this case 136 parts by weight of calcium sulphate will destroy 610 parts of dry soap ; but ordinary soap contains 20 per cent. of water, so that 136 parts of calcium sulphate will neutralise or render inoperative 762 parts of soap ; or, put it in another way, 1 lb. of lime or magnesium compounds in a quantity of water will practically destroy  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of soap. Now many waters contain 24 grains per gallon of these objectionable waters, and if, say, 1000 gallons of such a water were used in a wool-washing process, there would be present 24,000 grains, and these would consume or use up 134,400 grains, or nearly 19 lb. of soap. These figures show the enormous soap-wasting power of lime and magnesium compounds which may be present in water, and the importance of using water as free from them as possible ; or, at anyrate, when only hard water is available, taking steps to soften it by removing these objectionable bodies. This subject is too large to be dealt with here, but readers are referred to a book on *Water*, issued by Messrs. Scott, Greenwood, & Co.

It has been assumed above that the sulphates and carbonates of lime and magnesia have an equal soap-destroying power, but

such is not actually the fact ; there is a little difference, but it would complicate the position too much to discuss the case of each compound.

When hard waters are used in wool-scouring and other operations with soap, the formation of the curdy masses of lime and magnesium soaps is liable to lead to faults in the finished article, on account of the fact that these soaps are very liable to attach themselves to the substance which is being scoured or otherwise treated, and they cannot be effectually and completely washed out, so they remain in ; and if the goods have to be subsequently dealt with, as, for instance, is the case with woollen goods which are dyed after scouring, then the latter operations are not so efficiently done as if the lime, etc. soaps were not present. In the case of dyed goods their presence gives rise to stains of various kinds, or, if present in large amounts, then they impart a greasy, objectionable handle to textile fabrics. On various counts therefore it is extremely desirable, in textile operations involving the use of soap,—(1) to use water which is soft, or only of a few degrees of hardness ; (2) if hard water only is available, to soften it before use, as the cost of so doing is less than the value of the soap which the water would destroy ; or (3) treat the water with soap and soda first, and remove any scum of lime soap which may be formed before using the water.

##### 5. TREATING WASTE SOAP LIQUORS.

In the various textile industries, particularly in the woollen and silk trades, waste soap liquors are continually being produced in the various operations of scouring and milling of wool, boiling-off of silk, etc. At one time these were simply drained off into the nearest watercourse, with what effects on the purity of the water therein and the fish living in the water goes without saying. Then someone, whose name history does not record, conceived the brilliant idea of endeavouring to

recover the fatty matter of these soap liquors, and, working somewhat in secret, managed to make some money until wool-washers woke up to the fact that they might as well make money out of the waste soap liquors; while of late years the pressure of the Rivers Pollution Acts, and of the committees and boards who administer them, has caused the producers of these waste soap liquors to take steps to purify them by recovering the fatty matters, etc., which they contain.

*Waste Soap Liquors from Wool-Washing.* — It has been mentioned already that wool is treated with soap at two different stages in the process of woollen cloth manufacture, —first, in the scouring of the raw wool, and, second, in the cleansing and milling process after weaving. The practice of woollen manufacturers in regard to the soap liquors is various; some mix them all together, but the wisest plan is to keep the liquors from these two operations quite distinct, as the recovered fatty matter from the liquors of the second operation is of more value than the recovered fatty matter from the liquors got in washing raw wool.

The raw wool as it exists on the sheep's back is a most impure product, and varies very much. There is first a variable amount of earthy matter, dirt—from 2 to 26 per cent. has been recorded; there is next some soapy and other matter, commonly called the suint or yolk, which is soluble in water; then there are also fatty matters soluble in ether. The following are some analyses of raw wool based on the results of Marckt and Schultz:—

	1.	2.	3.
Water . . .	23·48	12·28	13·28
Wool fat . . .	7·70	14·66	34·19
Suint or yolk . . .	21·48	22·48	10·65
Lime soaps . . .	1·74	6·21	1·39
Dirt . . .	2·93	23·64	8·38
Wool fibre . . .	43·20	20·64	32·11

No. 1 is from a lowland sheep, No. 2 from a Rambouillet sheep, while No. 3 is a so-called pitchy wool which contains a superabundance of fat.

The fatty matters of wool are of a most complex character. There are fatty acids of acetic and oleic series, such as acetic acid, butyric acid, caproic acid, oleic acid, stearic acid, etc., present in the wool as potassium or lime salts; there are also present in wool the salts of lactic, benzoic, and propionic acids. There are also saponifiable neutral fats, some of which are glycerides, others are ethers resembling beeswax in composition. The wool fat consists, however, chiefly of peculiar alcoholic bodies, cholesterol and iso-cholesterol. These are not saponifiable, and are unacted upon by alkalies, and they possess the power of emulsifying with water. These bodies when obtained in the free condition form the basis of the product known as lanolin. When the raw wool is scoured or washed all these bodies pass into the liquors, along with any soap which has been used in the process. Some of these liquors are very rich in solid matter, consisting principally of grease.

The following table gives the analysis of several such liquors:—

	1.	2.	3.	4.
	Grains per gallon.			
Total solids . . . . .	1380	758	1246	685
Grease . . . . .	635	518	653.4	476
Alkalinity as sodium carbonate	132.5	113.5	214.6	102

The simplest process for the recovery of the grease, and one which has long been practised, consists in collecting the liquors in large tanks, warming to about 150° F. then adding acid. Hydrochloric is the best; the soaps present are decomposed, and the fatty matters rise to the top and are collected after cooling. Care must be taken that the acid be well mixed with the liquors. The greasy matters are skimmed off the top, they

are accompanied by various impurities of a solid nature, particles of wool fibre, vegetable fibre, dirt, etc. This crude grease is first drained on filters from any water it contains, it is then placed in cloths and pressed in a hot hydraulic or screw press, when the fatty matter flows out, leaving behind a cake of solid matter which is usable as a manure. The fatty product is known as Yorkshire grease, wool grease, brown grease, etc. It varies very considerably from a pale-brown coloured, smooth, homogeneous grease with a very adhesive feel, due to the cholesterine it contains, to a dark-brown, grainy, semi-solid mass.

The following analysis by the writer of samples of good Yorkshire grease will give some idea of its composition :—

	1.	2.	3.	4.
Specific gravity at 15·5° C.	0·9311	0·9417	...	0·9570
Do. do. 98° C.	0·8900	0·8952	...	0·8720
Water . . . . .	0·98	1·53	1·21	0·94
Fatty acid . . . . .	18·61	24·25	24·15	26·43
Saponifiable oil . . . . .	68·62	58·25	30·02	16·86
Unsaponifiable oil . . . . .	11·68	15·83	44·44	55·77
Mineral matter . . . . .	0·11	0·14	0·18	trace.

The first is probably a grease obtained in the milling process, because of the large proportion of saponifiable fats it contains, the fourth is one from the wash liquors of raw wool. The melting-point of Yorkshire grease is 44° C. (111° F.).

This recovered grease from the scouring liquors of raw wool is only suitable for the preparation of lubricating greases ; it has been tried for making soaps, but the results are not at all satisfactory, the soaps which are got being poor in colour, very greasy in feel, and not working well.

The waste soap liquors from the milling and fulling of woollen cloths may be dealt with in the same way. The recovered fat obtained from these liquors is purer in quality than that got

from raw wool liquors ; much, however, depends upon quality of oil (see "Wool Oils") used in oiling the cleansed raw wool before it was spun into yarn and woven into cloth. If it be a fairly good saponifiable oil, then the grease can be used to make soap by simply boiling up with caustic soda. If, however, it contain much unsaponifiable matter, the recovered grease is not suitable for soapmaking. One good plan of using the recovered grease would be to subject it to pressure, to separate it into liquid olein and solid stearin ; the former could be used for oiling wool, the latter for making soap or candles.

When the aim is simply to recover the fatty matter from wool-scouring liquors, there is no better process than the acid method, provided it is carried out in the best possible way. But where it becomes a question of purifying these liquors sufficiently for the effluents to be run away to brooks or rivers, then the acid process is not a good one, for it does not remove all impurities. The complete purifying of the liquors can be effected better by the addition of such precipitants as copperas (ferrous sulphate), magnesium sulphate, calcium chloride, or alumina sulphate, which throw down almost all organic impurities ; and by settling and filtering, an effluent is got which is usually good enough to satisfy the requirements of river boards and committees. One objection to such a mode of procedure is that the fatty matters have to be recovered afterwards by treatment with acid, which means extra time, labour, and plant, compared with the acid treatment. Still, a larger yield of fatty matter is the result. The acid liquors thus got are troublesome to deal with ; they may occasionally be used as precipitants for fresh lots of scouring liquors.

A good plan of working would be a combination of the two methods : first treating the liquors with acid, to obtain as much good fat as possible ; then treating the separated aqueous liquor with copperas or sulphate of alumina, settling or draining from any sediment that is formed, running the clear effluent



away, while the sludge or sediment is treated with acid to recover the fat it contains.

#### 6. BOILED-OFF LIQUOR.

For centuries silk has been deprived of its "gum," the sericin of the raw silk fibre, by boiling it in soap liquor. The waste liquor so obtained is known as boiled-off liquor, and is largely used in the dyeing of silk, for it is found to have a considerable levelling or equalising effect, and so tends to the production of level and uniform shades; noticeably is this the case with the basic coal-tar dyes, of which magenta, safranine, methyl violet, and brilliant green are examples, and all of which may be dyed in an old boiled-off liquor. It is also used in dyeing with acid dyes, like indigo extract, scarlet, acid yellow, orange extra, cyanole, lanafuchsine, formyl violet, etc., by adding acetic or sulphuric acid to the liquor, although with these dyes the boiled-off liquor can be replaced by Glauber's salt with some advantage.

Boiled-off liquor naturally contains the gum, or sericin, of the silk, of which the raw silk contains from 20 to 30 per cent. This is a nitrogenous product, hence it is prone to decomposition; thus, on keeping, boiled-off liquor becomes putrid and gives off an objectionable odour.

Usually from 20 to 25 per cent. of the weight of the silk of soap is used. (See "Silk Soaps," page 41.)

A sample of boiled-off liquor examined by the writer had a specific gravity of 1.002, and contained—

98.5	per cent.	water.
.6	do.	soap.
.9	do.	silk gum.

But of course the composition is liable to vary from time to time, as silk scourers differ from one another in the proportions of soap they use and strength of liquor they employ.

The only constituent of any value in the liquor is the fatty matter contained in the soap, but this cannot be recovered by treatment with acid, for the silk gum present seems to prevent the fatty matter from separating out, as it does from a plain soap solution on acidifying.

The best reagent to use is sulphate of alumina. A solution of 5 per cent. strength is prepared and added to the boiled-off liquor, which is cold and contained in tanks. The sulphate of alumina precipitates out both the soap and the silk gum, as a curdy mass. This is filtered off, and generally leaves the watery liquid quite clear, and in good condition to run away.

The mass of alumina soap and silk gum which is obtained is next mixed with a small quantity of water and hydrochloric acid, when the fatty matter separates out and collects on the surface of the aqueous liquid, and, by allowing the mass to cool down, can be easily skimmed off. The crude fat so obtained can be clarified by boiling over water, and is usually in sufficiently good condition to be made into soap.

The aqueous liquid from which the crude fat has been skimmed will contain the silk glue. It should be neutralised by the addition of soda and then passed through filter-beds, the effluent draining from which is ready for running off, while all impurities are retained on the filter.

Various other plans have been tried for recovering the fatty matter and otherwise dealing with the boiled-off liquor, both while fresh and after it has been used for dyeing, when, of course, it will contain some dyestuff.

A method of treating soap liquors, especially those which have been used in dyeing silk, is described by Gianoli in *L'Industria*. (See *Journal, Society of Dyers and Colourists*, August 1887.) The liquors are run at a temperature of 70° to 80° C. into suitable vats, and there treated with a mixture of hydrochloric acid and ferrous sulphate (copperas). Double decomposition ensues, free fatty acid, iron soap, and a com-

bination of albuminous matter and iron are formed. All these collect on the top of the liquid, which is drawn off. The pasty mass of iron soap, etc., is put into lead-lined vats, and there boiled with about 15 per cent. of its weight of sulphuric acid of  $51^{\circ}$  Tw. strength. The fatty acids of the soap are set free and are perfectly pure. They may be made into soap by caustic soda in the usual way. The acid liquor contains sulphate of iron, and may be used for treating fresh waste soap liquors.

#### 7. CALICO PRINTERS' AND DYERS' SOAP LIQUORS.

The used soap liquors which are obtained by the calico printer and dyer in working many of his processes may be purified much in the same way as the soap liquors so far discussed. Soap was formerly used much more extensively than is the case at the present time. A well-known Manchester firm of drysalters devised a process many years ago for dealing with these waste liquors, and were in the habit of buying up the fat that was recovered, and treating it for the purpose of making it marketable.

A simple plan with waste soap liquors of fairly good quality and free from much dyestuff, is to treat them with acid at a temperature of about  $150^{\circ}$  F. in suitable tanks. The fat collects on the top, and can be drained off, and if of good colour and quality, may be used to make soap with.

If the waste soap liquors contain much dyestuff, the best plan is to add sulphate of alumina, collect the precipitated soap, etc., on filters, allowing the aqueous liquor to flow away. The alumina soap is treated with dilute sulphuric acid to recover the fat, which is used again to make soap. The acid liquors contain the alumina, and may be used to precipitate a fresh lot of soap liquors.

When the recovered soap from any process is not good enough to make soap with, then it may be sold to greasemakers or to oil-distillers, who can deal with it.

## 8. SOAP ANALYSIS.

Soap manufacturers and users often require to know the actual contents of soap, etc., that any given sample of their own or of another maker's preparation may contain. Occasionally they may desire to know more particularly the constituents of a particular sample of soap. Such information as is here alluded to necessitates for its supply a chemical analysis, more or less full, of the sample being made.

Soap, when pure, consists essentially of three substances—fat, alkali, and water—in a state of more or less intimate union. Now, as in any process of soapmaking it is impossible, or nearly so, to completely saponify all the fat which is used, soap usually contains the fat in two conditions—*i.e.* free and combined; while the alkali may be present partly free and partly combined with the fat. In the great majority of cases it suffices to determine the above constituents to ascertain the value of a soap.

In some cases a more elaborate analysis is required, and other constituents—silicate of soda, salt, sulphate of soda, and other bodies, which may have been added for various reasons—being examined for. Then, again, a soapmaker may desire to know the nature of the fats used in making the sample.

A complete analysis of a soap—particularly an industrial soap—will take cognisance of the following constituents:—

Free fat.	Sodium sulphate.
Combined fat.	Sodium silicate.
Free alkali.	Borax.
Combined alkali.	Mineral fillings.
Water.	Glycerine.
Sodium carbonate.	Sugar.
Sodium chloride.	

Notwithstanding the great advance in the practice of analytical chemistry as applied to oils, fats, and products prepared from them, still much remains to be done before the analysis of soap in every phase is brought to a state of perfection, and an analyst can boast that he has given a perfectly true report as to the exact composition of any particular sample of soap that may come under his notice.

Before commencing an analysis of any particular piece of soap, it is of great importance to obtain a good average sample of it, and herein we may briefly touch upon a point of difficulty that the soap analyst must guard against if he desires to obtain good results. If a bar of soap, especially one that has been made for some time, be cut across, it will be observed that there is on the outside a skin which is harder than the central portion of the bar.

Now if portions are taken from the outer and inner parts of the bar and analysed, it will be found that different results are obtained, the outer skin containing much less water than the inner portion. Now, as it is usually the custom in soap analysis to take several portions for the different constituents, it is obvious that concordant results will not be obtained unless the analyst is exceedingly careful in selecting his sample and in cutting it up. In order to avoid this difficulty, many analysts have devised schemes for the analysis of a sample of soap from only one weighed portion. Some of these schemes have not been published, others have, and one or two of these will be noticed. One disadvantage of such schemes is that they take a considerable time to work through, and often time is of importance. Then, again, the soap is subjected to some operations which may have an effect on the character of the other constituents. Thus, for instance, supposing that, as a preliminary, the soap is dried, then the heat necessary for this purpose may bring about the saponification of some free fat with the free alkali present, and the soap would be returned as neutral when

it may really be alkaline. Again, if the soap be treated for certain reasons with alcohol, the latter might also bring about the complete saponification of the last traces of free fat and free alkali.

On the whole, if care be taken in sampling the soap and making all weighings of the testing samples at the same time, it will be found better, and quite as good results will be obtained, to use different samples of the soap for the various estimations.

*Water in Soap.* — Clean thoroughly and heat for a short time over an air-bath a porcelain evaporating basin; then allow to cool, and weigh. Cut the sample of soap into fine shreds, and weigh 10 grms. into the basin. Next place the basin of soap into a hot-air oven, heated to about 110° to 120° C., for about three to four hours; take the basin out, allow to cool in a dessicator, then weigh it. Next replace it in the oven for about an hour, again allow to cool, and weigh it; repeat these operations until there is no further loss of weight. The loss of weight may be taken as water, although, if in transparent soaps, a little of the spirit be left in, and this will also be volatilised and reckoned with the water. To take an example—

	Grms.
Weight of basin + soap . . . . .	35·368
Weight of basin . . . . .	25·368
Weight of soap taken . . . . .	10·000
Weight of soap and basin (B) . . . . .	35·368
Weight of soap and basin (A) . . . . .	33·296
Loss of weight . . . . .	2·092

$$2\cdot092 \times 10 = 20\cdot92.$$

In this soap there is then 20·92 per cent. of water.

This, although the best system of determining the water in soap, is a slow method, taking some hours to perform. It has

one advantage, and that is, the soap is in a suitable condition to use for further tests.

A quicker method is that described by Watson Smith. An evaporating basin with a short length of glass rod is weighed, and into it is weighed 5 grms. of the soap to be tested. The basin and its contents are placed on a sand-bath over a bunsen burner and heated, with constant stirring, until the soap begins to give off an odour of charring, which is readily perceptible. The heating is then stopped, and the basin and its contents allowed to cool, when it is weighed, the loss being the water in the soap.

	Grms.
Weight of basin + glass + soap . . . . .	36·979
Weight of basin + glass . . . . .	31·899
Weight of soap taken . . . . .	5·000
Weight of soap, etc., before heating . . . . .	36·879
Weight of soap, etc., after heating . . . . .	35·853
Loss of weight . . . . .	1·026

$$1\cdot026 \times 20 = 20\cdot52.$$

In this sample of soap there is 20·52 per cent. of water. This method of working, carefully followed, gives good results.

*Alkali in Soap.*—The alkali in soap may be present in two forms, free and combined. A good sample of well-made soap should not contain any free alkali; but it is very difficult to make a soap which shall not contain any, and so the best of soaps have frequently small traces present. It is only when special means have been taken to prevent its being present that soap is free from this constituent. The combined alkali is that which is combined with the fat to form the soap.

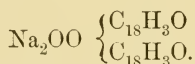
The free alkali may be present in the soap as hydroxide, or as carbonate. The former is the excess of the caustic alkali, used in making the soap, not removed in the finishing opera-

tions; the latter, when present, has usually been added as a fulling material.

It will be convenient if we first describe the estimation of the total alkali both as hydroxide and carbonate.

*Total Alkali in Soap.*—Ten grammes of the soap are weighed out and dissolved in 100 to 150 c.c. of water by boiling. To the solution sufficient methyl orange is added as will just impart a yellow tint to the liquid; then from a burette a normal standard solution of sulphuric acid is run in (titrated) until a permanent pink coloration is obtained. The solution may be kept warm during the operation with advantage. Note is taken of the number of cubic centimetres of standard acid used.

It is customary to consider soap as a combination of soda,  $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ , the oxide of the metal sodium, with the anhydrides of the fatty acids. In this view sodium oleate would have the formula—



Having this view of the composition of soap in mind, it is customary on the part of chemists to calculate the free and combined alkali in soap as soda (sodium oxide,  $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ), and accordingly the number of cubic centimetres of standard used is multiplied by 0.031, which gives the amount of soda in the 10 grms. of soap, and this multiplied by 10 gives the percentage of total alkali ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ) in the soap. As an example in testing a sample of soap, the readings on the burette were as follows:—

Second reading	.	.	.	.	32.5
First reading	.	.	.	.	6.0
					26.5

$$26.5 \times 0.031 = 0.8215,$$

$$0.8215 \times 10 = 8.215.$$

The soap contains 8.215 per cent. of alkali ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ).



In the author's opinion the customary view of the composition of soap as given above is wrong. He considers it preferable to view soap as being composed of basic radicle (which would be either the metal sodium or potassium, according to the nature of the soap), with fatty acid radicle. Sodium oleate would then have the formula—



This view of the composition of soap would bring the matter in a line with the currently accepted view of the composition or constituent of salts, with which class of compounds soap may be grouped. In consonance with this view the alkali in soap should be calculated to sodium (Na) by using the factor 0.023 to multiply the number of cubic centimetres of standard acid used. Thus in the example given above we should have—

$$\begin{aligned} 26.5 \times 0.023 &= 0.6095, \\ 0.6095 \times 10 &= 6.095. \end{aligned}$$

There is 6.095 per cent. of total alkali (Na) in this sample of soap.

In the case of testing soft soaps, the method adopted is the same. The factors to be used in calculating are 0.047 for potash ( $\text{K}_2\text{O}$ ), or 0.039 for potassium.

In this book, in all analyses of soap, the alkali will be given as sodium (Na) in the case of hard soaps, or as potassium (K) in the case of soft soaps.

*Free Alkali in Soap.*—To ascertain the amount of free alkali in soap is rather a troublesome matter. The simplest plan is to weigh out 10 grammes of the soap, dissolve in 150 c.c. of water by boiling, add a few drops of an alcoholic solution of phenol-phthalein, which will produce a red coloration if free alkali be present, then titrate with normal standard sulphuric acid until the red coloration disappears. The alkali is calcu-

lated to NaOH by the factor 0.04 in the case of hard soaps ; to caustic potash (KOH) by the factor 0.056 in the case of soft soaps. A good make of hard soaps will not take more than 0.75 to 1 c.c. of the standard acid to neutralise any free acid it may contain.

There are some objections, perhaps, to this method of working. In the first place, it fails if the soap contains a considerable amount of carbonate of soda or potash, as these bodies are slightly alkaline to phenol-phthalein ; if they are present, then another process must be adopted. Then, again, it is stated by many chemists that, on dissolving soap in water, a certain amount of decomposition occurs by hydrolysis : there is formed an acid soap, together with a little free sodium hydroxide. If this action does really occur, then, for the purpose of detecting free alkali in the soap, a solution in water is not available. The author, as the result of numerous analyses of soap, does not view this decomposition theory of soap solution with favour, and is very much inclined to the opinion that it does not occur. Soaps have passed through his hands which did not, with the processes above described, take more than 0.25 to 0.5 c.c. of acid to neutralise any free alkali they contained ; and the decomposition theory of soap, if it is worth anything, calls for the production of more free alkali than is represented by the quantities of acid which have been named.

Another method of determining the free alkali in soap is to weigh out 10 grammes of the soap and dissolve with the aid of a water bath in about 200 c.c. of neutral alcohol. It is best to use absolute alcohol, but as this is expensive, the ordinary methylated spirit may be used if it is subjected to a purifying process, the simplest method of conducting which consists in placing some caustic soda in the spirit, allowing to stand over a night, then redistilling about 90 to 95 per cent., the residue which remains in the still or retort being thrown away. Before use, the alcohol or spirit should be neutralised by adding a little

phenol-phthalein and sufficient caustic soda to produce a faint pink tint.

When the soap has been dissolved in the alcohol, or the latter has dissolved as much as it will, the solution should be filtered through a dry filter, taking care to expose the solution to the air as little as possible. The solution should be made in a flask, and the filtering should be done through a funnel into a flask, the funnel being covered by a glass plate. When the liquid has gone through the filter, the residue may be washed with a small quantity of neutral alcohol, the washings being added to the main body of the filtrate.

To the alcoholic solution is now added phenol-phthalein as an indicator, when, if there be any free alkali, a red colour will be obtained. The solution is now titrated with the standard acid as before, until the red colour is destroyed. The amount of free alkali is calculated as before.

The alcohol only dissolves the soap and any alkali which may be present as hydroxide (caustic) alkali ; any in the form of carbonate, borate, or silicate is undissolved, and remains as an insoluble residue on the filter. To this reference will again be made.

The alcohol method, like the water method, of dissolving the soap is open to objections. One feature is the great liability that the mere act of dissolving the soap in such a menstruum will bring about saponification between any free fat and free alkali which may be present in the soap, thus leading to too low a quantity of the latter constituent being found. It is, however, in the case of carbonated soaps, the only method which can be employed. In either the water or alcohol solution the combined alkali may be determined if, after titrating with the standard acid and phenol-phthalein of the free alkali, methyl orange be added, and the titration be continued until the characteristic pink coloration be obtained. Thus, in an analysis of a sample of "pale soap" made by the author,

employing a water solution and taking 10 grammes of soap, the following results were obtained :—

Free alkali, using phenol-phthalein as indicator.

Standard acid burette readings :—

Second reading	.	.	.	1.5
First do.	.	.	.	0.0
				1.5

$$1.5 \times 0.04 = 0.06$$

$$0.06 \times 10 = 0.6 \text{ per cent. of NaOH.}$$

Then added methyl orange and further titrated.

Second reading	.	.	.	26.7
First do.	.	.	.	1.5
				25.2

$$25.2 \times 0.031 = 0.7812$$

$$0.7812 \times 10 = 7.81 \text{ per cent. of combined soda (Na}_2\text{O).}$$

Or,

$$25.2 \times 0.023 = 0.5796$$

$$0.5796 \times 10 = 5.79 \text{ per cent. of combined sodium (Na).}$$

## 9. FAT IN SOAP.

*Fatty Matter.*—The fatty matter of soap is present in two forms, free and combined; the former should, in the best grades of soap, be present only in trifling amount. In some so-called superfatted soaps an excess of free fat, usually present in the form of wool fat or lanolin, is purposely added.

*Free Fat.*—To ascertain the amount of free fat in the soap, the dried 10 grammes of soap left after the determination of the moisture (*vide supra*) are wrapped in a piece of filter paper and placed in a Soxhlett fat-extraction apparatus, and extracted with petroleum ether. The operation may be allowed

to take one and a half hour; the ethereal liquid is run into a weighed glass, the ether evaporated off in an air-bath, and the residual free fat weighed. The fat so obtained will consist of (1) the portion of fat which has resisted the saponifying process; (2) any small proportion of unsaponifiable matter which may have been present in the fat or oils used to make the soap; (3) any fatty material added to "superfat" the soap; and (4) any fatty matters, such as mineral soap stock, which may have been added as a filling to the soap.

The total fat which is present in the soap is determined in the 10 grammes which have been used for the titration of free and combined alkali (*vide supra*). After the titration for the alkali a slight excess of acid is added, and the mass is heated over a bunsen burner until the fat separates out on the top of the aqueous liquor in a clear, transparent layer of oil. Two plans may be followed for collecting and weighing this fat. The method commonly recommended is, with all those soaps which will give a solid fat, to allow the fat to cool and set into a solid cake; the aqueous liquid is now run off and clean water added. The mass is now heated until the fat is once more melted, when it is again allowed to cool, the cake of fat is separated from the wash water, dried between sheets of filter-paper, and weighed.

When the soap is of such a character as to yield fat that will not separate out as a solid cake, but which remains more or less liquid or paste, 10 grammes of white wax or of paraffin wax are added to the fat, melted up along with it, and finally weighed with it. From the final weight that of the wax is deducted, leaving the weight of fat present in the soap.

There are some objections to this method of working, and it requires care in execution if good and reliable results are to be obtained. It is difficult to remove the whole of the fat from the sides of the glass beaker which is used in carrying out the operation, and this tends to reduce the amount of fat found. Then it is difficult to free the cake of fat from all traces of

moisture, and hence there is a liability from this cause to increase the apparent weight of fat. The two sources of error thus indicated, acting in opposite directions, may tend to neutralise one another. Another objection to the method is the time it takes.

The author recommends the following process, which, in his hands, gives good results. After titrating with standard acid for the alkali, and melting the fat as described above, a small quantity of petroleum ether is added and the mixture poured into a separating funnel; more warm, but not hot, water is added, with, if needful, more petroleum ether. The contents of the funnel are now well shaken and then allowed to stand to settle, when two layers will form, the upper one of ether with the fat, the lower of acidulated water.

The latter is now nearly, but not quite, run off, and fresh warm water added to wash the fat, this being repeated if required. The ether layer is then run into a weighed glass beaker, the ether evaporated off, and the residual fatty matter weighed.

By any of the processes above described there is obtained the total weight of fat in the soap. This fat will contain the free fat as well as that present in combination with the alkali in soap. The amount of the latter can be determined by deducting the amount of free fat which has previously been ascertained. The combined fat consists essentially of fatty and rosin acids.

We do not obtain them in the form in which they are present in the soap, where they are combined with sodium (Na) as acid radicles, which may be represented by R in the compounds of which  $\text{NaR}$  is the typical formula,—but as fatty acids, represented by the formula  $\text{HR}$ , and so the results are slightly —1 in 282—in excess of the truth; thus then a well-made analysis of soap, taking the water and fatty matter as found, the free alkali as  $\text{NaOH}$ , the combined alkali as Na, will come

out slightly in excess of 100 ; this excess will range from 0·1 to 0·3, according to the quantity and character of the fatty matter present.

If the soap contains much coco-nut oil, the results obtained in determining the amount of fatty matter by either of the methods given will be too low, owing to the oil containing fatty acids which are soluble in water, and which pass into the wash waters, and so are not collected and weighed.

Mr. J. A. Wilson recommends the following process :—10 grammes of the soap are dissolved in water and decomposed by a slight excess of dilute sulphuric acid ; the glass or flask containing the soap mass is then heated until the fatty matter collects in a clear layer on the surface of the aqueous liquid. The vessel and its contents are now cooled and the cake of the fatty acids separated out, while the aqueous layer is filtered through a wet filter-paper. The cake of fatty acids is washed three times with 250 cubic centimetres of boiling water, cooling and filtering each time. The various filtrates are collected, methyl orange is added as an indicator, and the liquor titrated with decinormal caustic soda until the pink colour changes to yellow. By this means the excess of mineral acid used in decomposing the soap is got rid of. To the liquid is added phenol-phthalein, and the titration continued until the characteristic pink colour is got ; the amount of standard soda solution used corresponds to the amount of soluble fat acids present, and these are calculated to caprylic acid,  $\text{HC}_8\text{H}_{15}\text{O}_2$  by multiplying by the factor 0·0144. The cake of fatty acids may be dried and weighed, thus giving the amount of insoluble fatty acids.

It may be mentioned here that, by collecting the fatty acids, dissolving them in neutral methylated spirit, using phenol-phthalein as an indicator, and titrating with standard caustic soda, there is obtained the amount of alkali required to combine with the fatty acids to form soap ; if in previous tests

more has been found, then such excess must be present in other forms.

In case the soap analyst adheres to the method of calculating the alkali as sodium oxide ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ), then he must reckon the fatty acids as anhydrides. The quantity of these he may calculate from the amount of fatty acids found by multiplying by the factor 0.97, which, while not accurate for every case, is sufficiently so for all the common grades of soap.

*Sodium Chloride in Soap.*—The amount of sodium chloride present in a sample of soap may be determined in the aqueous liquor which is obtained in the titration for alkali with standard sulphuric acid. This may be done either volumetrically or gravimetrically. In the volumetric process the liquid is neutralised with caustic soda, which is free from chloride, then a few drops of a solution of pure potassium chromate are added, and the liquid titrated with a normal solution of silver nitrate until a permanent orange or reddish colour is obtained. The number of cubic centimetres of silver solution used, multiplied by 0.0585, gives the amount of sodium chloride present in the soap.

If it be desired to determine the chloride gravimetrically, then the aqueous solution is heated to the boil, and sufficient of a solution of silver nitrate added to precipitate all the chloride as silver chloride, the precipitate is collected on a filter, well washed, dried, burnt in a porcelain crucible, and weighed. The weight of silver chloride so found, multiplied by 0.407, gives the weight of sodium chloride in the soap.

*Glycerine.*—This constituent may be looked for in some makes of toilet soaps, in all soaps made by the cold and pressure processes, and in soft soap. Generally its amount is taken by difference; that is, all the other constituents of soap are determined, and any difference required to make up the full amount is taken as glycerine. No satisfactory method for its determination in soap has been devised; the method based on



its conversion in oxalic acid by means of an alkaline solution of potassium permanganate is perhaps the best.

To detect the presence of glycerine in soap, the following tests may be applied:—Decompose the soap with acid and separate out the fatty matter, evaporate the aqueous liquor down to a small bulk, mix it with some borax, dip a piece of platinum wire in the mixture, and then hold it in the flame of a bunsen burner; if glycerine be present the flame will become tinged with a deep green colour. By heating concentrated solution of glycerine with bisulphate of potash, acrolein, distinguished by its powerful and characteristic odour, is obtained. Another test is to boil the aqueous solution down, render it faintly alkaline with caustic soda, and add to it a solution of borax which has been coloured a faint rose red by adding phenolphthalein. The glycerine solution is added until the red colour disappears. On boiling the liquid the colour comes back, but it again disappears on allowing the liquid to cool down. It should be stated that this test is not specially characteristic of glycerine, as some other alcoholic bodies and some kinds of sugar give the same reactions, but as such bodies are not usually present in soap they may be disregarded.

Sugar is present only in transparent soaps, and in these not to a large amount. Its presence may be detected by the Fehling test as follows:—The aqueous solution of the soap, after the fat has been separated, is boiled for half an hour with a few drops of sulphuric acid, the solution is then neutralised with caustic soda, some Fehling test solution is added, and the mixture boiled, when the presence of sugar is indicated by the formation of a red precipitate of cupreous oxide. If it be desired to determine the amount of sugar present, the aqueous solution is boiled with the acid, as described above, a slight excess of caustic soda added, and the solution heated to the boil; Fehling test solution is added as long as a precipitate falls down, or until the liquor acquires a blue colour, the liquid

being maintained at a boil ; the precipitate is next filtered off, well washed with water, dried, burnt in a weighed porcelain crucible, and weighed. The weight of copper oxide thus found, multiplied by 0.40875, gives the weight of cane-sugar in the soap.

Starch in soap may be detected by means of the iodine test, which produces a deep blue to blue-black colour. The soap solution must be neutralised before applying the test. If the amount is to be determined, the process is identical with that for estimating the sugar, the copper oxide obtained being multiplied by 0.40816 to obtain the equivalent weight of starch. It is obvious that if both starch and sugar be present, both will be found by the Fehling test, and they must be differentiated by other tests ; but it is extremely unlikely that both will be present at the same time in a sample of soap.

When both sugar and glycerine are present in a soap, the best method of working consists in evaporating the aqueous solution down, then treating the residue with a mixture of one volume of chloroform with two volumes of alcohol, which dissolves out the glycerine ; the solution is evaporated in the water-bath, and the residual glycerine weighed. The sugar may be estimated in the residue left by the alcohol and chloroform ; it is dissolved in water, and the sugar determined by the Fehling test in the manner described above.

Dr. Albert R. Leeds' scheme for the analysis of a sample of soap with only one weighing, first published in a weekly technical paper, is given below, modified slightly by the present writer.

*Dr. Albert R. Leeds' Scheme of Soap Analysis.*

Weigh out 5 grammes of the soap and dry at 100° C.  
The loss of weight corresponds to the water.

Treat the dried soap in a Soxhlett apparatus with petroleum ether.

Ethereal extract contains the free fat, evaporate off the ether and weigh the residual fat.

Residue contains the soap and mineral matter ; treat it with alcohol.

Alcoholic solution contains the soap and free caustic alkali. Add a few drops of phenol-phthalein and titrate with normal sulphuric acid. The amount used corresponds to the free alkali, which is calculated to NaOH, factor 0.04. Add water and boil off the alcohol ; add a little methyl orange and titrate with normal sulphuric acid. Acid used corresponds to combined alkali, calculated as either  $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$  or Na, factors 0.031 or 0.023. Add slight excess of acid, boil, and separate out the fat.

Solution contains glycerine. Evaporate to dryness ; after neutralising with sodium carbonate, extract with alcohol, filter, place the filtrate in a weighed basin, and, after evaporating off the alcohol, weigh the residual glycerine.

Residue is the fatty matter. Dry and weigh it. Take half of it and dissolve it in alcohol, add phenol-phthalein and titrate with normal alcoholic soda. From the amount used the molecular weight of the fatty acids may be calculated. Add ether and dry powdered silver nitrate. (Gladding test, see further on.) Shake well, and allow to settle.

Precipitate consists of the oleate, stearate, and palmitate of silver with excess of nitrate of silver. It may be neglected.

Solution contains resinate of silver. Filter from the precipitate, wash the latter with a little ether, transfer the filtrate to a separating funnel, add water, sufficient dilute sulphuric acid to decompose the resinate, and some petroleum ether if necessary. Separate the ether layer and run it into a weighed glass, evaporate off the ether, and weigh the residual rosin.

Residue from the alcohol contains  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , NaCl,  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ,

$\text{Na}_2\text{SiO}_3$ , or corresponding potassium salts, starch, and any mineral matters. Treat it with a little water, and filter through a weighed filter.

Solution.—Divide into four equal portions, *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*, and test each as follows:—

- a.* For  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , or  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ , titrate with normal  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , with methyl orange, calculating the result to  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ , or  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ .
- b.* For  $\text{NaCl}$  or  $\text{KCl}$  titrate with standard  $\text{AgNO}_3$ , or weigh as  $\text{AgCl}$ , calculating to  $\text{NaCl}$  or  $\text{KCl}$ .
- c.* For  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  weigh as  $\text{BaSO}_4$ , calculating to  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{K}_2\text{SO}_4$ .
- d.*  $\text{Na}_2\text{SiO}_3$  or  $\text{K}_2\text{SiO}_3$ . Decompose with  $\text{HCl}$ , and weigh the residual silica.

Residue contains starch and added mineral matter. Dry and filter and weigh. This gives the amount of starch and mineral matter. Determine the amount of starch by Fehling test. The mineral matter may be determined by difference.

Some difficulty is often experienced in the process of digesting the soap with alcohol if an ordinary beaker be employed. To overcome this, Spæth proposes extraction in a Soxhlett extractor with alcohol, the soap being contained in a narrow glass vessel similar to a weighing bottle, but with perforations at the bottom and in the lid. The holes at the bottom are covered with ignited asbestos fibre, over which a layer of filter paper, and finally a glass disc with fine perforations, are placed. The bottle thus prepared is dried at  $105^\circ\text{C}$ . for an hour and weighed. The loss in weight gives the amount of water in the soap.

The bottle, without the lid, is then placed in the Soxhlett extractor, and its contents extracted with neutral alcohol for about six hours. After complete extraction, the bottle and its contents are dried at  $150^\circ\text{C}$ . and weighed, the result giving the amount of "filling material" in the soap. The determination

of mineral substance, dextrin, gelatin, etc., in this is carried out in accordance with the usual methods.

Since the extraction is made with neutral alcohol, the amount of free fatty acids or alkalies in the alcohol extract can be directly titrated with standard alkali or acid.

## SECTION II.

### ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE OILS AND FATS.

#### TALLOW.

**T**ALLOW is, or should be, derived from the fat of cows, oxen, sheep, goats, and similar animals, the best fat being taken from the thicker deposits which surround the abdomen, known generally among butchers as "the skin," although it is known by other names in some places. Anatomists call it "omentum." Tallow is also obtained from the fat surrounding the large muscles, the kidneys, and the other organs of the body. Fatty matter can be, and is, obtained from other parts of the animal, such as the intestines, bones, etc., and such fat is often sold as tallow, sometimes with a qualifying distinction as "bone tallow," at other times, and wherever possible, without such a qualifying description. Whenever tallow is dealt in as tallow, it is always understood to be the fat obtained from the parts above named, and the sale of any other kind of fat should be regarded as a fraud upon the buyer.

The deposit of tallow as it exists in the animal body is found to be contained in small cells or bladders of animal tissue. The reason for its being in this condition is that, being a liquid, and therefore able to move with every motion of the parts, yet it is not able to flow from the spot in which it is found. As it is taken from the body, the crude fat is known as "butcher's fat," and is usually purchased from the butcher by the tallow

refiner, who, if he be located in a large town, often distinguishes between "town fat" and "country fat," the former being usually fresher, and therefore yielding a better quality of tallow than the latter. The idea or principle which underlies all processes for the extraction of the tallow from this rough fat is to separate out by some means the animal tissue from the actual fatty matter, a process which is known as "rendering." Various methods have been adopted to render tallow, and will be found described in the writer's book on "Soaps."

Of fatty matters obtained from other parts of the animal body, the intestines give what is called "tripe tallow"; the feet yielding "neatsfoot oil." The processes for extracting these greases or fats do not differ essentially from those used for tallow, but, as a rule, they are obtained by simply boiling the various parts of the animal in water, and skinning the fat which is obtained from the top of the water, where it collects; while the tripe and feet are used as food.

A great deal of fat, largely used in making soap, is now extracted from bones, and sold as "bone grease," "bone fat," "bone tallow," and, not seldom, wherever possible as tallow. All bones do not contain tallow or fat; the best are cows' and bullocks' shank-bones, which are hollow and contain a fairly large proportion of good fat, often separately extracted and sold as "marrow tallow." The more solid bones found in the animals do not contain much fat, and scarcely pay for its extraction. Horses' bones contain so little fat that they are not worth the process of treatment.

In dealing with bones, it is therefore worth while to sort them into those which are worth treating for the fat, and those which are not worth so treating.

Tallow comes into this country from all parts of the world. Now it is a well-known fact with regard to natural products obtained from various localities that they vary somewhat in appearance, colour, odour, and consistence, etc., to say nothing

of minor differences in chemical composition. Tallow is no exception to this rule, hence in the tallows which are sent into England from North America, Australia, Russia, India, etc., there are certain minor differences by which experts can tell the locality from which the tallow came.

There can scarcely be any doubt but that these differences are caused by the difference in character of the food on which the cattle feed in the different localities, and which must vary to a great extent. Commercially, tallows are distinguished according to their country of origin, and of the cattle, oxen, or sheep, or "beef" or "mutton," from which they are obtained. Russian tallow comes chiefly from Cronstadt, Odessa, Taganrog, and St. Petersburg. It is derived chiefly from oxen, and is a hard, yellowish tallow, better suited for candlemakers than for soapmakers. A large proportion of the Russian tallow finds its way from Siberia, but no distinction is made between this tallow and that from other parts of Russia. South America sends both "beef" and "mutton" tallow. It is chiefly shipped from the River Plate ports. It is of a strong yellow colour, and usually of fair quality, and serviceable for all uses. North American tallow is of very good quality, rather paler in colour than South American, and is the favourite tallow of soapmakers. It is mostly "beef" tallow that comes from North America, but "mutton" tallow is also sent over. Australia also sends large quantities of both "beef" and "mutton" tallow to England, of fairly good colour and quality. The value of the tallow depends on its consistence—the harder the tallow and the higher its melting-point, the more valuable it is. These points vary very much within certain limits, which will be presently pointed out.

The chemical composition of tallow varies somewhat according to the method of feeding and the locality, as well as the kind of tallow. Tallow consists essentially of the two glycerides, olein and stearin, the latter predominating, forming from 60 per



cent. in soft, to 80 per cent. in hard, tallows. Margarine is also probably present in some tallows, while there are also nearly always small quantities of animal tissue, colouring matter, and water, but these should not altogether amount to more than from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 per cent. of the total. Beef tallow contains more olein than mutton tallow, so that it is rather softer in consistence, and therefore better adapted for soapmaking and lubricating and for making tallow oil, whereas mutton tallow is more suitable for the candlemaker.

The specific gravity of beef tallow ranges from 0.935 to 0.939, while that of mutton tallow ranges from 0.937 to 0.940 at 60° F. (15° C.), while at 212° F. (100° C.) the specific gravity is from 0.860 to 0.862. The melting-point of tallow varies very considerably, usually ranging from 36° to 49° C. (97° to 120° F.); the lower limit is that of a soft tallow, while the higher limit is a hard tallow; 39° C. (102° F.) is the average melting-point of tallow. After being melted, it begins to solidify at rather lower temperatures, from 33° to 46° C. (115° F.), but at the moment of solidifying the temperature rises a few degrees. When pure, tallow should be white, fairly firm, and without much odour and taste. It is soluble in from 40 to 44 times its volume of alcohol. Generally it contains a small quantity of free acid, ranging from 0.75 to 7 per cent., although occasionally samples with larger quantities are met with. For soapmaking, the presence of free fatty acid is not detrimental, but rather otherwise; but for lubricating machinery it is decidedly disadvantageous.

When melted tallow is allowed to cool very slowly at a temperature of not less than 27° C. to 30° C. (80° to 86° F.), it forms a granular mass, the stearin crystallising out in the form of small nodules, which can be separated from the more fluid mass by pressure. The process is known as "seeding," and is largely applied to the separation of the stearin of the tallow for use in making candles; while the liquid which

passes through the press is known as "tallow oil," and is used for lubricating machinery and for soapmaking.

When boiled with caustic alkalies, tallow is converted into soap. Of caustic soda, tallow usually takes about 13.79 to 13.85 per cent. to completely saponify it; while of caustic potash it requires 19.32 to 19.38 per cent., the alkalies being in both cases taken as chemically pure; of the ordinary commercial products more will be required, according to the strength of the article, which varies very much. When the soap formed by boiling tallow and alkali together is treated with acid, the fatty acids of the tallow are separated, and usually are found to amount to 95 per cent. of the tallow used. The melting-point and specific gravity of these fatty acids vary with the quality of the tallow.

Tallow is frequently adulterated. Among other bodies have been used soft fats from other parts of the animal, such as bone or tripe tallows, cotton-seed oil, seal oil, stearin from wool grease, among fatty matters—to say nothing of china clay, starch, and similar products. It is by no means an easy matter to detect some of these adulterants; cotton-seed oil stearin is very difficult to detect. The specific gravity of the fat at 100° F., the melting-point, is some guide, while the increased proportion of solid fatty acid would be a clue to its addition. Cotton-seed oil can be detected by its reducing the specific gravity and melting-point, and increasing the proportion of liquid fatty acids, as well as by the silver nitrate and iodine test. Stearin from wool grease can be detected by the tallow containing a large proportion of fatty acid, as well as by the silver-nitrate test.

Bone grease can be detected by the tallow containing phosphate of lime, which is a characteristic ingredient of bone grease. The addition of such matters as china clay and starch can be detected by melting the tallow and allowing these insoluble matters to settle out. Such forms of adulteration

are now rare, and show unskilful work on the part of the adulterator. Paraffin wax and scale and mineral oil are sometimes added; these may be detected by their reducing the percentage of potash required to saponify the tallow, and by the sample having a low flash-point (under 400° F.).

Tallow is now rarely used for lubricating machinery. At one time it was largely used for lubricating steam-engine cylinders, but it has been superseded by the petroleum cylinder oils. It is used now in small quantities for lubricating heavy engine bearings, bearings of rolling mills, and for making lubricating greases.

Tallow is also very largely used in the sizing of cotton yarns.

Tallow is more largely used for soapmaking than any other fat that is known; it gives a good soap, hard, and of a good white colour. This, however, is modified by the colour of the tallow and the care taken in making the soap. The grain of tallow soap is good and uniform; it is not readily soluble in water, and on that account it does not lather so freely as some soaps do. On the other hand, it is not so wasteful in use, its cleansing powers are excellent, and it keeps well, not acquiring any objectionable odour or becoming rancid on keeping.

It is rather troublesome to saponify, but by the exercise of a little care on the part of the soapmaker this can be easily got over.

#### *Constants of Tallow.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·943 to 0·942.

Do. do. 50° C. (122° F.), 0·895.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0·862.

Melting-point, 42° to 46° C. (107° to 115° F.).

Solidifying-point, 36° C. (98° F.).

Insoluble fatty acids (Hehner value), 95 to 96 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 19.3 to 20 per cent. KOH.

Iodine, absorbed (Hubl test), 39 to 44 per cent.

Reichert value, 0.25 c.c.  $\frac{N}{10}$  KOH.

Viscosity at 120° F.	.	.	.	.	.	53
Do. 150° F.	.	.	.	.	.	35
Do. 212° F.	.	.	.	.	.	25

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Tallow.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (12° F.), 0.8698.

Melting-point, 43° to 44° C. (108° to 110° F.).

Solidifying-point, 42° to 43° C. (107° to 108° F.).

Molecular weight (combining weight), 284.

Iodine, absorbed (Hubl test), 40 per cent.

LARD.

Lard, as is well known, is the fat obtained from the leaf and other parts of the pig. It is almost entirely used for culinary purposes, and but rarely for industrial uses. It is used to a limited extent in soapmaking, and then only in making the best grades of soaps, where a good white colour and easy solubility are desired, lard in regard to these points ranking with coco-nut oil. Lard is a soft fat of a consistency equal to or slightly harder than butter, melting to a clear water-white oil; its consistency varies slightly in different samples. It is white in colour, although sometimes it may have a faint yellowish or creamy tint; its odour and taste are sweet and pleasant, and if well refined it keeps well and saponifies freely, forming a good white hard soap with soda, and a white soft soap with potash. It consists essentially of a mixture of stearin and olein in somewhat varying proportion, from 60 to 65 per cent. of olein, and 35 to 40 per cent. of stearin; there are also

small quantities of palmitin present. Lard is subject to adulteration, the usual ingredients added being other fats and cotton-seed oil. Lard soap has a good white colour, uniform texture, and lathers freely in water, being superior in this respect to tallow soap; it is also free from any strong smell, and does not go rancid.

*Constants of Lard.*

Specify gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·931.

Do. do. 50° C. (122° F.), 0·881.

Do. do. 100°. (212° F.), 0·858.

Solidifying-point, 27·1° to 29° C. (80° to 84° F.).

Melting-point, 40° to 42° C. (104° to 108° F.).

Insoluble fat acids (Hegner value), 96 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 19·5 per cent. KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 59 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Lard.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (212° F.), 0·844.

Solidifying-point, 39° C. (102° F.).

Melting-point, 43° C. (107° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 280.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 64·2 per cent.

BONE GREASE.

This fat is largely used in the manufacture of the cheap sorts of soaps, such as domestic, manufacturer's, wool-scouring and milling soaps, either alone or in admixture with other fats and oils. Its preparation has already been mentioned under "Tallow." As usually sold, it is in the form of a greyish-coloured, granular soft fat, its consistency being between tallow and lard. It has a slight odour when fresh, which often develops into an

unpleasant one if the fat becomes rancid. It contains some water, the amount varying from 2 to 6 per cent., small quantities of animal tissue, from 0·5 to 1 per cent., the latter being rather an excessive proportion; the proportion of free acid in bone grease is rather higher than in tallow, the amount ranging from 7 to 21 per cent. Then small quantities of phosphate of lime are present, this constitutes a characteristic test for the presence of bone grease. Two samples of such a grease examined by the author had the composition—

	No. 1.	No. 2.
Water . . .	3·17 per cent.	2·28 per cent.
Free acid . . .	21·71 „	6·97 „
Unsaponifiable oil	0·28 „	0·32 „
Saponifiable oil .	74·84 „	90·28 „
Phosphate of lime	traces „	0·15 „
	<hr/>	<hr/>
	100·00	100·00

Owing to the variable quality of bone fat, it is advisable to test it for moisture, etc., before buying.

The water it contains may, if thought necessary, be got rid of by melting the fat, and keeping it in a melted condition for some hours.

The colour of bone fat varies a great deal, but as a rule this is of little detriment to its soapmaking properties, as the colour generally finds its way into the soap lyes, and a pale soap, rather softer than a tallow soap, and a little more soluble in water, is obtained. Bone-fat soap still retains some of the odour of the fat, and so, if used for domestic soaps, some scent is required to disguise this odour, but if used for manufacturing soap the odour is of little consequence. Common grey mottled soaps are largely made from bone tallow.

## TALLOW OIL.

Tallow oil is obtained from tallow by melting and keeping the tallow in a warm room at about 80° to 90° F. for some hours, when the stearin it contains crystallises out in the form of small granular particles; hence this process is known as "seeding." The seeded tallow is then placed in canvas cloths and put under hydraulic pressure, when the olein it contains flows out, together with a little of the stearin, and forms the tallow oil of commerce. It is also sold under the names of ox oil, animal oil, etc. Its chief use is for lubricating machinery, but it is used for making soap when a white soap rather softer and more soluble than a tallow soap is required. Tallow oil varies much in consistence, some samples are more fluid than others, according to the proportion of stearin which the oil contains; if there is much, then the oil is solid; if little, then it is liquid. The specific gravity varies for the same reason from 0.911 to 0.915. Tallow oil contains a varying proportion of free acid, from nothing in well-prepared samples to 15 or 16 per cent. in others. Tallow oil should be quite white when cold, or have at the most a faint yellow tint. When melted it ought to be quite clear and bright, free from any cloudiness or floating particles of any kind. It has only a slight odour of an animal fat.

## LARD OIL.

Lard oil, like tallow oil, is not much used in soapmaking, finding its principal use in lubricating machinery. It is prepared from lard by the same process as tallow oil is made from tallow. It resembles the last oil in its properties and uses. It is, if anything, rather lighter in colour, and has a slight odour which resembles that of lard.

## VEGETABLE SOAP OILS AND FATS.

## PALM OIL.

Next to tallow, palm oil used to be the fat most used for making soaps, but of late it has been displaced by cotton oil, which is cheaper, and gives a better soap for the general run of domestic purposes.

Palm oil is obtained from the fruit of various species of palm trees, natives of the oil regions of the west coasts of Africa. The tree which yields the largest proportion of the palm oil of commerce is the *Elais guinensis*. The fruit of the palm is about the size of a small plum, and hangs in bunches from the trees. Like the plum, it contains an outer pulpy mass and an inner kernel. From the outer pulp is obtained palm oil, while the kernel yields palm-nut or palm-kernel oil, also used in soap-making, but which has different properties to palm oil.

The natives of the oil regions employ a variety of methods for the purpose of extracting the oil from the fruit. The commonest plan consists in stacking the nuts as they are taken from the tree in heaps for from seven to ten days, when by the decomposition of some of the vegetable tissues surrounding the husk of the nuts the husk can be readily removed, leaving the internal pulp and kernel. The pulp is of a rather hard nature, and to soften it the nuts, after being husked, are thrown into pots and covered over with plantain leaves, then with earth and palm leaves. In this condition they remain for a period varying from three weeks to three months, according to the fancy or practice of the particular tribe of Africans who are making the oil.

At the end of the period named the pulp will have been converted into a soft mass. It is then thrown into pits lined with stones, where it is subjected to a pounding process whereby the pulp is separated from the kernels. The former



is now thrown into boiling-pots and boiled with water, when the oil rises to the top and is skimmed off, any vegetable tissue which may accompany the pulp passing into the water; or the oil may be separated from the vegetable pulp by heating it with water, so as to melt the oil, and then squeezing the mass in bags, when the oil flows out.

The quality and consistence of the product depends partly on the particular species of palm from which it is made (but as to this point, definite information is required), but more particularly upon the care with which the process of extraction has been carried out, and the length of time the fruit is allowed to remain in the pits.

A long steeping results in the oil being harder, but at the same time its quality is materially decreased. It acquires a rancid odour, its colour is not as bright, and it contains more free acid, indicating that a decomposition into acid and glycerine has taken place. A short steep gives a soft oil of a sweet odour and a bright colour. The process of extracting palm oil being as crude as it can well be, it is evident that the commercial article is far from being all pure fat. It may contain some traces of vegetable tissue, etc., which, being very liable to ferment, will in course of time gradually bring about the decomposition of the oil, resulting in its becoming more or less rancid, and losing its odour and colour.

Palm oil is a solid fat of about the consistence of butter. It has an orange to golden yellow colour which is highly characteristic, but is liable to vary very much. Salt pond and brass oils have usually a brownish-yellow colour; Lagos oil is a bright orange; Sierra Leone is rather redder; New Calabar oil is a golden yellow. The colour is probably partly dependent upon the species of palm from which the oil is obtained in the first instance, and partly on the process of extraction. Lagos oil is the best and most neutral quality, the proportion of free

acid it contains rarely exceeding 10 per cent., and the amount of water and other impurities not more than 2 per cent., and in consistency it is the softest of the palm oils. Brass, so far as freedom from impurities is concerned, comes next to Lagos oil; it is the hardest of the palm oils, and on that account is the quality most in favour with candlemakers. It usually contains a large percentage, 53 to 65, of free fatty acid, and by far the largest proportion of palmitic acid in any variety, hence its hardness.

Salt-pond oil is one of the worst qualities of palm oil to be found on the English market, the amount of impurities often being found to amount to 20 per cent., while the free acid has been recorded by Norman Tate to be as high as 80 per cent., indicating that but little actual oil is present.

The colour and odour is usually poor. Half-jack, Bonny, and New Calabar oils occupy intermediate positions between these oils in hardness and quality generally. Palm oil has a peculiar violet-like odour, which is communicated to the soap which is made from it.

Chemically, palm oil consists of a mixture of palmitin and olein in various proportions, with varying quantities of free palmitic and oleic acids. The specific gravity of palm oil at 15° C. varies from 0.920 to 0.926. The specific gravity at 100° C. ranges from 0.875 to 0.859, the melting-point is exceedingly variable, ranging from 25° to 36° C. (77° to 97° F.), the setting-point being a few degrees lower. When saponified palm oil yields from 94 to 97 per cent. of fatty acids, the setting-points of which range from 41° to 46° C. (108° to 113° F.), the combining equivalent is from 273 to 274. Palm oil takes from 19.6 to 20.2 per cent. of caustic potash, KOH, or from 14 to 14.4 per cent. of caustic soda, NaOH, to saponify it.

Palm-oil soap has an orange-yellow to yellow colour,

depending upon the quality of the oil from which it is made, and it also possesses the characteristic odour of the oil which has already been referred to. It is hard, not liable to go rancid, and will keep well, improving in quality in so doing; it lathers fairly well, and is a good cleanser, altogether being a first-class soap, much used by calico printers and dyers.

Palm oil may be bleached, which must be done if the oil is to be used for making a white soap. There are many processes available for this work. The best is Watt's, by means of bichromate of potash; then it may be bleached by blowing air or ozone through it, and by other means. These processes are described in the author's book on *Soaps*. Adulterated samples of palm oil are scarcely known. The author has not met with one in the course of his practice, nor is the fact that it is adulterated referred to in the text-books on oils.

*Constants of Palm Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.920 to 0.924.

„ „ 150° C. (120° F.), 0.893.

„ „ 100° C. (212° F.), 0.8586.

Melting-point from 27° to 42° C. (80° to 107° F.).

Insoluble fatty acids (Hehner value), 96.5 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 20.2 per cent. KOH.

Reichert value, 0.5 c.c.  $\frac{\text{HN}}{10}$  KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 51 to 52 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Palm Oil.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (212° F.) 0.8369.

Melting-point, 50° C (122° F.).

Solidifying-point, 45.5° C. (113.5° F.).

Saponification value, 20.6 per cent. KOH.

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 270.

## PALM-NUT OR PALM-KERNEL OIL.

The nuts or kernels of the palm fruit are collected and imported in large quantities into this country, for the purpose of pressing the oil from them. In some places a very crude method is in use for extracting the oil. The nuts are put into a pan over a fire and charred slightly; some of the oil exudes and is poured off. The roasted nuts are now ground up and boiled with water; the oil they contain rises to the top and is skimmed off. After a short boil the mass of kernel meal is reground up, mixed with a little water, and again boiled up, when more oil is obtained. This is skimmed off as before. The oil obtained by this process is of a dark colour, and is unsuitable for making good soap.

Palm-nut oil is of white or faintly yellowish colour, of a consistency similar to butter, resembling in odour coco-nut oil, from which it can hardly be distinguished. The melting-point ranges from  $26^{\circ}$  to  $30^{\circ}$  C. ( $78^{\circ}$  to  $86^{\circ}$  F.).

Much depends upon the proportion of oil extracted from the kernel; the first portions which are pressed out being the softest and having the lowest melting-point, the last portions being harder and having the highest melting-point. It takes from 22 to 24 per cent. of caustic potash, or from  $15\frac{1}{2}$  to 17 per cent. of caustic soda, to saponify it.

In this respect it resembles coco-nut oil, to which also it approximates in composition, containing a large proportion of the lower fatty acids—lauric, capric, capryllic, and caproic acids—but not to so great an extent as does coco-nut oil. Oudemans gives the following analysis of palm-nut oil:—

Glyceride of oleic acid . . . . .	26·6
Glycerides of stearic, palmitic, and myristic acids . . . . .	33·0
Glycerides of lauric, capric, capryllic, and caproic acids . . . . .	40·4.

Palm-nut oil is fairly free from free acid, and is not very liable to go rancid.

In its specific gravity at both 60° and 212° F. it resembles closely coco-nut oil.

Palm-nut oil is largely used in soapmaking in the place of coco-nut oil, and gives a soap of similar properties.

Palm-nut oil is said to be adulterated with lard, tallow, and other cheaper fats and oils; such adulteration can be detected by means of the saponification value or the distillation test.

*Constants of Palm-Nut Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.952

Do. do. 40° C. (105° F.), 0.9119.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0.8731.

Solidifying-point, 20.5° C. (79° to 80° F)

Insoluble fat acids (Hehner value), 91.9 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 24 per cent. KOH.

Reichert value, 2.4 c.c.  $\frac{N}{10}$  KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 10 to 13 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids of Palm-Nut Oil.*

Solidifying-point, 20° to 23° C. (71° to 76° F.).

Melting-point, 25° to 28° C. (77° to 80° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 211.

Iodine value, 12.07 per cent.

COCO-NUT OIL.

The next soap oil which claims notice is that obtained from the coco-nut, or the cocoa-nut, as it is sometimes spelt, the fruit of the coco palm, *Cocos nucifera*.

The fruit of this palm is a very useful product. It is of large size, the outer portion consisting of a fibrous mass, which is made into ropes, mats, and carpets. Inside this is the nut proper consisting of a hard outer portion useful as fuel, and, inside this again, a layer of pulpy matter of a white colour, which is that portion of the fruit patronised by the young idea at fair times. The central portion of the nut is occupied by a milky fluid. The pulp is of a very oily nature, the proportion of oil usually averaging over 50 per cent.

This pulp is dried by exposure to air, and in that condition is known as "coprah," and is imported into this country in large quantities for the purpose of extracting the oil out of it. The native method of extracting the oil consists in heating the pulp with water, when the oil rises to the top and is collected. Another method, commonly followed when inferior qualities of oil only are wanted, is to heat the pulp with a little water, so as to render the oil more fluid, and then to subject the mass to pressure in a rude kind of oil-press worked by oxen. In some places the pulp is dried and then grated by means of cutting machines, and this, after being mixed or heated with water, is pressed, yielding a large quantity of a good quality of oil.

Coco-nut oil comes into this country from many places in South-Eastern Asia, the best being that from Ceylon. Cochin China oil ranks very close behind; Malabar oil is of very good quality; Manilla oil is good; and some comes from Mauritius and the Fiji Isles.

In this country coco-nut oil is pressed from imported coprah, but coprah oil is not usually of as good a quality as imported oil.

Coco-nut oil makes its appearance in this country in the form of a white but soft fat. In Asiatic countries it is a water-white, rather limpid oil. It melts at from 20° to 25° C. (68° to 77° F.); its specific gravity at 60° F. is 0.931, at 212° F. it is 0.870. Its odour is pleasant and characteristic, resembling that

of the coco-nut. It is liable to become rancid, when its odour becomes more pronounced.

It is fairly easily saponified, and on that account it is much employed in the manufacture of soaps by the cold process. It gives a white soap, possessing good lathering properties, and one which, for reasons which will be pointed out presently, works well in hard waters, or in waters which contain a good deal of saline matter in solution. It takes from 24·5 to 26 per cent. of caustic potash, or from 17·4 to 18·7 per cent. of caustic soda, to completely saponify coco-nut oils—a larger amount than is required for any other known fat.

Coco-nut oil is one of the most complex oils known, as far as regards its chemical composition: the principal fatty acid present is lauric acid ( $\text{HC}_{12}\text{H}_{23}\text{O}_{21}$ ); there is also present caproic acid ( $\text{HC}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_{21}$ ), capryllic acid ( $\text{HC}_8\text{H}_{15}\text{O}_{21}$ ), capric acid ( $\text{HC}_{10}\text{H}_{19}\text{O}_{21}$ ). These acids are all soluble in water, and are volatile when distilled with steam or water.

It is the presence of these lower soluble fat acids which causes coco-nut oil to require so much alkali to saponify it, and to form a soap which works with hard water; for the lime salts of these fatty acids are, comparatively speaking, soluble in water, and the alkali soaps are much more freely soluble in saline solutions than is the case with the alkali salts of oleic or stearic acids, for example. There is also present in coco-nut oil, stearic acid ( $\text{HC}_{18}\text{H}_{35}\text{O}_2$ ), palmitic acid ( $\text{HC}_{16}\text{H}_{31}\text{O}_2$ ), with smaller quantities of other acids of the same series, and there is but comparatively small quantities of acids of the oleic series. Of course it should be understood in speaking of fatty acids in coco-nut oil that these do not exist in it as free acids, but in the form of glycerides. Lauric acid has a combining weight of 200. The combining weight of the fatty acids which can be extracted from coco-nut oil, by saponifying and liberating the acids with sulphuric acid, ranges from 196 to 204. When these fatty acids are distilled with water, the distillate possesses an acid

reaction due to the volatile or soluble acids coming over ; the acidity from 100 parts of oil are equal to 0·7 to 0·83 of caustic potash. Butter and palm-nut oil have a similar composition.

Coco-nut oil has very little power of absorbing iodine or bromine ; of the former it takes up 8·9 to 9 per cent., of the latter 5·7 per cent. It yields from 12 to 13 per cent. of glycerine, and from 94 to 96 per cent. of fatty acids.

In soapmaking, coco-nut oil is largely used for making white soft soap, in conjunction with tallow ; for making cold-process soaps ; and for making marine and hard-water soaps. When it is known that soap is going to be used in districts where hard water prevails, it is a good policy to use a little of this oil in making the soap, for then a lather is more readily obtained, and there is not so much waste of soap by the action of the lime in the water.

Coco-nut oil is comparatively easily saponified, and will take a stronger alkali than any other fat ; thus, while with tallow a stronger alkali than 10° Tw. cannot safely be used, with coco-nut oil the lye may be 20° to 22° Tw. strong. It is this feature of coco-nut oil that makes it so useful for cold-process soaps. It also requires more salt to salt out, nearly twice as much as tallow or other oil soaps.

Coco-nut oil is seldom adulterated, and only with animal fats and greases and solid vegetable fats and stearines. Any such adulteration can be detected by alteration of the saponification value, reduction of the specific gravity at 212° F., and reduction of the amount of volatile acids.

*Constants of Coco-Nut Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·930.

Do. do. 40° C. (105° F.), 0·9115.

Do. do. 100° C. (212 F.), 0·8736.

Solidifying-point, 16° to 20° C. (60° to 70° F.).

Melting-point, 20° to 28° C. (70° to 80° F.).



Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 25 to 26 per cent.

KOH.

Insoluble fat acids (Hehner value), 83 to 88 per cent.

Reichert value, 3.5 c.c.  $\frac{N}{10}$  KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 8.9 to 9.3 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Coco-Nut Oil.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (212° F.) 0.8354.

Solidifying-point, 20° C. (70° F.).

Melting-point, 24° to 25° C. (75° to 77° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 196 to 206.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 9.3 per cent.

OLIVE OIL.

The olive is the fruit of the olive tree, *Olea europaea*, which grows very abundantly in those countries of Europe, Asia, and Africa that border on the Mediterranean. It is extensively cultivated in Italy, North Africa, Grecian Archipelago, Spain, and Asia Minor, from all of which places olive oil is exported. The olive is a fruit resembling the plum, and of about the same size. There are certain variations of the olive grown in various localities, due to climatical differences in the mode of cultivation. The fruit is collected when just ripe, and in that condition it yields the finest quality of oil. Olive oil is yielded by the pericarp or pulp which surrounds the kernel. The kernel is also capable of yielding oil, but it is interesting to note that the oil yielded by the kernel is different from that given by the pulp. The olive oil is obtained from the fruit by pressure, and some portion is also separated by use of solvents. The simplest method which has been in use for a long time consists in pressing in a primitive mortar, and separating the oil which flows out. Generally, the pulp is put into a large

tub or tank and subjected to pressure. The oil which flows out is known as "virgin oil." It is of fine quality, and used chiefly for edible purposes. There is a considerable proportion of oil left in the pulp, and this is usually extracted by boiling with water, then subjecting the residual pulp to a second pressure. A rather poorer quality of oil is thereby obtained. This quality of oil is chiefly used for lubricating, soapmaking, wool-oiling, dyeing, and general industries. A poorer quality is often got by subjecting the residual cake from this second pressing to extraction by means of bisulphide of carbon. This gives a lower grade of oil, used for the commonest purposes, and generally known as "sulphur" olive oil.

Olive oil varies considerably in its quality. The best oils have a yellowish colour, while some of the inferior qualities are of a greenish-brown tint. In some cases the oil has a greenish tint. The specific gravity ranges from 0.916 to 0.919 at 60° F., the presence of much free acid lowering it. The best quality of olive oil contains usually about 2 per cent. of free acid. Certain grades of what are known as "*huiles tournants*," prepared from very ripe and fermented fruits, which are largely used in dyeing, contain as much as 25 per cent. of free acid. The odour of olive oil is pleasant and peculiar, the taste is sweet and bland. When cooled down, olive oil deposits stearin, and becomes solid at 6° C. (23° F.) It requires from 19.1 to 19.06 per cent. of KOH to saponify it. It absorbs iodine, and when mixed with sulphuric acid, gives rise to an increase in temperature of 41° to 45° C. One property of olive oil is, that when mixed with sulphuric acid or nitrate of mercury, it becomes solidified, being converted into elaidin. This property is not possessed to the same degree by another oil. Olive oil is largely adulterated, the usual adulterants being cotton-seed oil and mineral oils, but the character of the adulteration varies from time to time.

The presence of cotton-seed oil tends to increase the specific

gravity, while that of mineral oils tends to reduce it; at the same time their addition reduces the flashing-point of the oil.

To determine the purity of olive oil, regard must be paid to the specific gravity, flashing - point, Koettstorfer test, Hubl iodine value, the Maumene sulphuric acid test, and elaidin test.

Olive oil with caustic soda yields a soap of a smooth texture, hard and somewhat brittle when dry, breaking with a conchoidal fracture. The colour varies with the character of the oil, good oil yielding a white to cream-coloured soap, the poorer qualities yellow to greenish soaps. These soaps keep well, and have fairly good lathering and cleansing properties. They are much used in the calico-printing trade and for boiling-off silk, owing to their freedom from smell and comparatively easy solubility. The original Marseilles or Castile soap was made from olive oil. A soft soap is often made from olive oil for use in some trades.

*Constants of Olive Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·916 to 0·919.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0·862.

Solidifying-point, 6° C. (23° F.).

Insoluble fatty acids (Hehner value), 93·4 per cent.

Reichert value, 0·3 c.c.  $\frac{N}{10}$  KOH.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test, 19·1 to 19·6 per cent. KOH.

Iodine value, 80 to 83 per cent.

Maumene test, 41·5° to 45° C.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Olive Oil.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (212° F.), 0·8759.

Solidifying-point, 21° C. (70° F.).

Melting-point, 26° C. (79° F.).

Molecular weight (combining equivalent), 283.

Iodine value, 86 to 88 per cent.

## COTTON-SEED OIL.

Of late years the oil obtained from the seeds of the cotton plant, *Gossypium sp.*, originally known only as "cotton-seed oil," but now also as "cotton oil," finds its way into most of the common household soaps which are now the fashion.

Cotton is obtainable from several species of trees belonging to the genera *Gossypium*, of which the most important is that grown in America, the *Gossypium barbadense*; but the cotton tree is also grown in Egypt, India, Siam, China, the tropical portion of South America, and in other localities. The seeds of the cotton are of comparatively large size, averaging from half to three-eighths of an inch in length, by a quarter of an inch broad, and one-eighth of an inch in thickness, more or less rounded, and of a greenish-grey colour. To the seeds are attached the fibres which give the cotton-tree its value, and which are imported into this country in large quantities, and woven into calico and other textile fabrics. These fibres are separated from the seed by a process known as "ginning."

To extract the oil from the seeds, they are first decorticated, that is, they are passed through a mill, whose action is to break open the hull of the seed, and so liberate the kernel which contains the oil of the seed. With clean seed, free from much attached cotton fibre, there is no necessity to decorticate the seed, but some varieties of cotton-seed retain the fibre with great tenacity, and such seeds must be decorticated.

The decortivating machine consists of a hollow cylinder in which revolves another cylinder, the surface of which does not touch the surface of the outer cylinder. The inside surface of the outer cylinder has a number of knives arranged round it, while the surface of the inner cylinder has a similar set of knives. These are so arranged that when a seed passes between the two sets of knives it is cut, the hull falling in two parts, while the kernel falls down whole, or in some mills it is cut in

two. By winnowing, the heavy kernels can be separated from the light hulls, which are either used as fuel or manure.

The cotton-seed oil as it comes from the press in either system of crushing is of a dark, wine-red colour, owing to its containing a rather large proportion of red colouring matter, amounting, according to Longmore, to 10 lb. to 15 lb. per ton of oil. Before the oil can be used for any purpose, this colouring matter must be removed. This is effected by treating the oil with caustic soda, which dissolves out the colouring matter, while having only a slight action on the oil. The quantity of caustic soda used varies in different refineries, but amounts from  $\frac{3}{4}$  lb. to 1 lb. of 77 per cent. solid caustic soda per 100 lb. of oil. It is used in the form of solution of varying strength at different works from 10° to as much as 40° Tw.

Perhaps the best plan is to use a lye of from 10° to 12° Tw. strong. Of this about 10 lb. are required for 11 cwt. of oil. The caustic and the crude oil are mixed together in wooden tubs, and, if thought necessary, they can be heated a little by means of steam, being agitated thoroughly all the time. This is best effected by means of air pumped in by a force-pump, the air not only thoroughly agitating the oil and soda, but to some extent it probably acts as a bleaching agent on the oil. After a few minutes of such treatment the oil is allowed to stand for some time, when a curdy mass of soda and colouring matter, with some soap, which has been formed by the action of the soda on the oil, will settle out. The character of the oil is then noted. If not bright enough or free from colour, more soda lye is added, and the treatment repeated. As a rule, not more than one such addition is required. The whole mass is allowed to stand to settle. The clear, bright oil is sold as cotton-seed oil, while the coloured mass of soda, colouring matter, and soap is treated in various ways. One plan is to treat it with acid, when it is decomposed, and a dark, greasy mass comes up to the top, which can be used for making very

common, dark-coloured soaps; by suitable means the colouring matter can be taken out and used as a dye, though for this purpose it cannot compete with the coal-tar colours; while the fatty matter present is recovered in a form suitable for use in soapmaking or candlemaking. The loss in refining crude cotton-seed oil amounts to from 4 to 5 per cent.

The refined cotton-seed oil so obtained contains a large amount of stearin, and hence will, in cold weather, set almost solid. By a process of refrigerating and pressing, the stearin may be removed, and is sold as cotton stearin or oleo-margarine for various purposes, while the liquid oil is often sold under the name of "non-congealable cotton oil."

The crude cotton oil has a specific gravity of from 0·928 to 0·930. Refined cotton oil is a clear, bright oil of a pale yellow colour, but it can be obtained almost, if not quite, colourless. It has a pleasant, sweet taste, somewhat characteristic, while its odour is but slight, and yet characteristic. Its specific gravity varies from 0·922 to 0·926 at 15° C., much depending upon the amount of stearin in the oil, which increases its gravity. It solidifies at from 0° to 2° C. (32° to 35° F.), the more common qualities at even higher temperatures, varying with the amount of stearin they contain. Cotton oil contains olein, stearin, palmitin, with small quantities of linolein. In its general properties it lies between the true non-drying oils, like olive, and the true drying oils, like linseed oil, becoming viscid on exposure to the air by absorption of oxygen. Fox, in a former number of *The Oil and Colourman's Journal*, states that one gramme of cotton oil will absorb 26·4 cubic centimetres of oxygen gas more than olive will, but not so much as linseed oil. Consequently cotton oil cannot well be used as a lubricating oil, nor as a drying oil for paint; but as a food oil, and for soapmaking, it has come into rather extensive use.

It takes 19.5 per cent. of caustic potash, KOH, or 14 per cent. of caustic soda, NaOH, to saponify it, giving a rather curdy soap. It is more difficult to saponify than tallow and some other oils, and the soap retains the lyes very much, so that it is difficult to separate the soap and lyes completely, and to obtain a perfectly neutral soap. Cotton-oil soap is much darker in colour than tallow soap, the small quantity of the colouring matter of the seed which is still left in seeming to develop a dark colour with the alkali. The soap made from this oil is comparatively easily soluble in water, and therefore lathers freely, and does not last as long as a soap made from tallow and some other fats. Another feature of cotton-oil soap is that when kept for some time it goes rancid and acquires a peculiar odour, but it takes some months for this odour to develop itself. The fatty acids, insoluble in water, at 100° C. have a specific gravity of 0.9494, and melt at from 35° to 44° C. (93° to 111° F.).

Cotton oil is rarely, if ever, adulterated, there being no cheaper fat oil, and so any possible adulterant must be one of the mineral oils, the presence of which can be detected by the low flash-point, which will be about, or less than, 400° F., while cotton oil does not flash below 475° F. The quantity of such adulterant can, of course, be determined by the usual tests.

#### *Constants of Cotton Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.922 to 0.925.

Do. do. at 100° C. (212° F.), 0.8725.

Solidifying-point, 0° to 1° C. (32° to 33° F.).

Insoluble fatty acids (Hehner value), 96 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 19 to 19.6 per cent. KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 106 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Cotton Oil.*

Specific gravity at 100° C. (212° F.), 0.880.

Solidifying-point, 32° C. (89° F.).

Melting-point, 35° C. (95° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 286.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 115.

## LINSEED OIL.

There is scarcely a more useful plant grown than the flax plant, known to botanists as *Linum usitatissimum*. Its fibres are converted into the textile fabric known from the earliest times under the name of "linen"—one of the oldest, if, indeed, not the oldest, of the textiles,—while its seed is usable in a variety of ways. In medicine it has wide applications. It yields an oil that has many useful properties, some of which will be considered in the present article; while, after the oil has been extracted, there remains what was at one time quite a useless by-product. Hundreds of tons of it were at one time annually thrown into the river at Hull, but it is now the valuable and well-known oil-cake of commerce, largely used for feeding cattle. In earlier times this country was practically dependent on Russia for its supply of seed, but at the present day linseed is extensively grown in many parts of the world. The greatest bulk is now grown in India; Russia holds the second place, and the district of the River Plate the third. The seed is flattish in shape, somewhat oval, and varies much in colour—some being pale green, others pale brown, some reddish brown, while others again are nearly white, and all are somewhat lustrous in appearance. Experts can tell, on looking at a sample, whether it has been grown on the borders of the Black Sea, the Baltic, in Calcutta, Bombay, or on the River Plate, and from the appearance of the samples can estimate pretty correctly what quantity of oil each will pro-



duce. Baltic seed is often mixed very largely with other seeds, several of which do not yield oil, whilst others yield oil with quite different qualities from linseed.

When linseed oil of a high and pure quality is desired, the foreign seeds have to be removed from the linseed before it is crushed. These admixtures of foreign seeds with linseed are sometimes natural, that is, they all grow in the same field together, but they are as often caused by wilful adulteration. Some low-class Baltic seed does not yield more than 20 per cent. of oil, whilst the highest-class seed (Bombay) occasionally yields 40 per cent. All the linseed grown in India yields more oil than any of the seed grown in Russia. The difference in temperature is supposed to affect the yield of oil, the warmer climate making the seed richer in oil, whilst the colder one makes it poorer. Linseed is manipulated in various ways, and is afterwards subjected to pressure to expel the oil from it. Linseed oil is a limpid oil of a greenish-yellow colour, varying a good deal in shade, which depends partly on the care exercised in the pressing of the oil, and also on its refining.

East India oil is usually paler than other varieties, while Black Sea oil is the darkest, although poor samples of Baltic run it very close in colour. The odour and taste of linseed oil are peculiar and characteristic, not to be mistaken for any other oil. The specific gravity of linseed oil varies somewhat, the average being 0.935, but the range is from 0.932 to 0.937, at the standard temperature of 60° F.; at the boiling-point, 212° F., the specific gravity is about 0.881. It is soluble in about forty times its own volume of alcohol at the ordinary temperature, and in about five times its volume at the boiling-point. When exposed to cold, it does not begin to become solid until a temperature of 27° C. is reached. It is soluble in almost all solvents, like ether, petroleum spirit, turpentine, benzol, etc.

Sulphuric acid has a powerful charring action on this oil; great heat is evolved, the temperature often rising considerably

above the boiling-point of water, while a copious evolution of sulphur dioxide takes place, and a treacly mass of a dark red-brown colour is obtained. Nitric acid oxidises it readily, though much depends upon the strength of the acid which is used.

Iodine and bromine have a strong affinity for linseed oil, which will absorb 170 per cent. of its weight of iodine, and 98 per cent. of its weight of bromine; in this respect linseed oil has more energetic properties than any other oil.

Linseed oil is easily saponified by boiling with either caustic potash or caustic soda; it requires for complete saponification 18·9 per cent. of its weight of caustic potash, and 13·5 per cent. of caustic soda. With potash it yields a soft soap, clear and transparent, of a brownish-yellow colour, possessing a peculiar smell, and having good detergent properties. When the proportions of alkali and oil are carefully regulated, the soap may be obtained of neutral properties. With caustic soda, linseed oil forms a reddish-coloured soap of a buttery consistency; on this account linseed oil is rarely if ever used in making any of the ordinary domestic hard soaps, although it does find its way into a few of the special soaps.

Linseed oil is the basis from which nearly all the soaps of commerce are made, and for this purpose no better oil can be used. A linseed-oil soft soap is of a good bright appearance, pleasing in colour, and free from any objectionable odour, which is not the case with some other soft soaps. It retains its consistency for a considerable period, which is a point of some little advantage in soft soaps.

When a linseed-oil soap is treated with dilute sulphuric acid, the fatty acids are separated out; these acids are of a buttery consistency, melting at from 22° C. to 25° C. At the ordinary temperature they have a specific gravity of 0·924 to 0·927, while at the boiling-point the gravity is 0·861 to 0·864. They are insoluble in water, but dissolve readily in alcohol, glacial

acetic acid, ether, and other solvents. Their combining equivalent is very high, viz. 306, which points to the presence of acids of high molecular weight.

Some recent researches tend to show that there is present in linseed oil an acid named linolic acid, having the same formula as homolinoleic acid, which yields sativic acid when acted upon by an alkaline solution of potassium permanganate; the other is named linolenic acid, and differs from the last acid in containing two atoms less hydrogen. Perhaps the most important property of linseed oil is that of drying upon exposure to the atmosphere, this makes it very valuable in painting, but has no bearing on its use in soapmaking.

Linseed oil cannot be used in oiling wool, for if so, the oil absorbs oxygen with such rapidity that great heat is developed, and there is much risk of the wool taking fire from spontaneous combustion.

*Constants of Linseed Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.932 to 0.935.

Do. do. 50° C. (122° F.), 0.920.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0.881.

Solidifying-point, 16° to 20° C.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 18.9 to 19.5 per cent. KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 170 to 175 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Linseed Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.923.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0.892.

Solidifying-point, 16° C. (62° F.).

Melting-point, 20° C. (68° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 307.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 179 per cent.

## CASTOR OIL.

The next oil which claims notice is castor oil. This is obtained from the seeds of the castor-oil plant, *Ricinus communis*, a native of India, where it grows luxuriantly. The plant is a common one in English conservatories, and so is familiar to most persons. The seeds are of comparatively large size, of a greyish-green colour, and a lustrous appearance; they contain a large proportion of oil, nearly 50 per cent., which is extracted by pressure in the usual way, or by boiling the seeds in water. Several qualities are recognised: that extracted by pressure is the best, and sold chiefly for pharmaceutical purposes; the average commercial qualities are imported from Calcutta, Madras, Bombay, France, and Belgium.

What is known as "first-pressure French" is about equal in quality to what is known as "seconds Calcutta." Castor oil is a thick viscid oil; in colour it varies from colourless in the pharmaceutical product to a greenish yellow in poorer sorts; its specific gravity ranges from 0.960 to 0.970, the average being 0.964; occasionally samples are met with having a specific gravity below 0.960, but such are rare. The odour varies considerably; the best qualities are fairly free from smell, but the poorer sorts have a nauseous odour. The taste also varies in the same way—the common qualities have a peculiar nauseous taste, from which the best kinds are free.

It does not begin to become solid until a temperature of 18° C. (0° F.) is reached, and even then only a few flakes are deposited. The oil is distinguished from other fatty oils by its peculiar physical and chemical properties, having a very high specific gravity and a high viscosity. The relative viscosities of castor and sperm are 1248 and 56.5 respectively, which figures will convey some idea of the viscid character of this oil. It is readily soluble in alcohol, 1 part in four of rectified spirit at 15° C. (60° F.). This enables any addition of other

oils to be detected. It is insoluble in petroleum spirit or in mineral oil; though this is only correct at ordinary temperatures. On being heated, castor oil will mix with or become soluble in the petroleum spirit or mineral oil, but as the temperature cools down again the two liquids separate out.

Castor oil consists of a little palmitin, which separates out when the oil is cooled down, and the glyceride of a peculiar acid, ricinoleic acid, which has hitherto been found only in castor oil. This acid has the composition shown in the formula  $C_{17}H_{32}OHCOOH$ ; it differs from the other fatty acids in containing three atoms of oxygen, and there is reason for thinking that this extra atom of oxygen is combined with an atom of hydrogen in the form of hydroxyl, as shown in the formula given above: ricinoleic acid is therefore a hydroxy-fatty acid. The presence of this hydroxyl group gives to ricinoleic acid the property of forming, with sulphuric acid, ethers, and on this property is based the use of castor oil in the preparation of olein oil for calico printers' use.

Castor oil yields about 9.1 per cent. of glycerine and 96.1 per cent. of fatty acids. These have a combining weight of 306 to 307, and a specific gravity of 0.950 to 0.951 at 60° F. They are thick, viscid, and of an oily appearance, and besides containing ricinoleic acid, they also contain palmitic acid. It yields a very soluble soap with caustic soda, and is easily saponified. By careful treatment a liquid soap may be obtained which is much used by dyers and cotton finishers under the name of "soluble oil." Castor-oil soap is very clear and transparent, therefore it is largely used in preparing the cheaper kinds of transparent soaps; but as it is very soluble in water, such soaps are very wasteful to use.

Castor-oil soap has often a faint odour of the oil, and is apt to go rancid on keeping. It makes a good soft soap, but is not much used for this purpose. It takes 17.5 to 18 per cent. of caustic potash, from 12.5 to 12.8 per cent. of caustic soda, to

saponify it, rather less than the majority of fats and oils; a stronger lye, from 15° to 18° Tw., can be used, and it is easily boiled up, and lends itself to the cold process of soapmaking with great facility.

*Constants of Castor Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·960 to 0·966.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0·9096.

Solidifying-point, 17° to 18° C. (1° to 3° F.).

Reichert value, 1·6 c.c.  $\frac{N}{10}$  KOH.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 17·8 to 18 per cent. KOH.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 83·6 to 84 per cent.

Acetyl value, 153·4 per cent.

*Constants of Fatty Acids from Castor Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0·9509.

Do. do. 100° C. (212 F.), 0·896.

Solidifying-point, 3° C. (27·5° F.).

Combining equivalent (molecular weight), 292.

Iodine value (Hubl test), 90 per cent.

CORN OIL.

This oil has of late come into considerable prominence as a soap oil. It is obtained from the seeds of the maize plant (*Zea mays*), and is extensively produced in America, being largely made as a bye-product in the manufacture of starch and glucose from Indian corn. It is a viscid liquid of a bright amber-yellow colour, has a faint and peculiar odour and sweetish taste, recalling that of corn flour; it has a comparatively high specific gravity, being comparable with cotton-seed

oil in this respect; it is comparatively easily saponified, taking from 18.4 to 19 per cent. of caustic soda to saponify it; yielding a soap of yellowish colour, very homogeneous, and of good consistency, very closely resembling a cotton-oil soap of a good bright, transparent appearance, and good detergent properties; and it is for making soft soaps that it will be found of most service. The oil yields on saponification and acidification fatty acids, melting at from 16° to 18° C., and solidifying at from 13° to 14° C.

*Constants of Corn (Maize) Oil.*

Specific gravity at 15° C. (60° F.), 0.9203.

Do. do. 100° C. (212° F.), 0.8694.

Insoluble fatty acids (Hehner value), 96 per cent.

Solidifying-point, 10° C. (14° F.).

Iodine value (Hubl test), 116 per cent.

Saponification value (Koettstorfer test), 18.4 to 19 per cent. KOH.

Reichert value, 4.2 to 4.3.

WHALE OIL OR TRAIN OIL.

This oil used at one time to be largely employed in the manufacture of soft soap, especially in Scotland, the home of the fish oils, but of late its use even for this purpose has decreased considerably. Whale oil, or, as it is often called, train oil, is obtained from the blubber of various species of whales. It varies very considerably, not only in composition, but in quality. There are many species of whales, and each of these may reasonably be suspected of yielding an oil which differs in some respects from the oil of other whales. Generally, however, the whalers mix the products of different whales together indiscriminately, consequently the oil from different

whaling ships, capturing a variety of whales, will differ somewhat. Then, again, the methods of extracting the oil from the blubber vary very much, and this has a very considerable influence on the quality of the oil. Of late years there has been more care exercised in the extraction of the oil, and consequently the quality of the product has much improved. The old method used to be to store the blubber in tanks, and extract the oils either on land or, oftener than not, when the ship arrived home; the blubber being boiled in water, the oil rising to the top and being collected; or, blubber was allowed to drain on racks,—the former process giving the best oil, the latter the worst. This method of keeping the blubber for some time before extracting the oil resulted in its decomposition, and the products thereby formed found their way into the oil and decreased its quality by making it of a darker colour and imparting to it a more powerful odour. As a rule, whale oil is extracted from the blubber by the process of boiling it in water, whereby a better quality of oil is obtained; one advantage of the process being that the ships can store more oil. Whale oil is a reddish-coloured oil, having a fishy odour and taste; the colour, odour, and taste varying in different oils. Its specific gravity is about 0.925. When cooled down many samples of whale oil deposit some stearin as a brownish-coloured mass, smelling of fish. It takes about 18 to 19 per cent. of caustic potash, and about 13.5 to 14 per cent. of caustic soda, to saponify it. The potash soaps are of a brownish-red colour and have a fishy odour, and are very soluble in water. The soda soaps have a dark-red colour and fishy odour, are rather soft in consistency, and owing to this fact whale oil cannot well be used in the preparation of hard soaps. Whale oil contains notable quantities of valeric acid, which is one of the volatile members of the stearic series of fatty acids.



## RAPE OIL.

This oil is pressed from the seeds of various species of rape plants, *Brassicæ natus*, *Brassicæ campestris*, etc.

It is a brownish-green oil (brown rape oil), or, in the refined varieties, a yellowish oil having a greenish tone. It has a peculiar and characteristic odour. Its specific gravity varies a little, but usually ranges from 0·915 to 0·916, usually being 0·914 at 60° F. By blowing air through it, it is converted into what is known as "thickened rape oil," a very viscid oil, of specific gravity 0·970 and a peculiar odour. Rape oil takes about 17·25 per cent. of caustic potash, or 12·5 per cent. of caustic soda, to saponify it. In each case soaps are obtained which are of a greenish-yellow colour and smell strongly of the oil. It is in consequence rarely used in soapmaking. Further, the soda soaps are of a pasty consistency, too soft for hard soaps. This oil is frequently adulterated, chiefly with cotton and mineral oils, both of which are comparatively easy to detect. Rape oil contains three peculiar and characteristic acids—brassic, rapic, and brucic acids,—which belong to the oleic and linolenic series of fatty acids, and they have a high molecular weight.

Rape oil cannot be used in oiling wool, for it has a power of absorbing oxygen, and is, in consequence, rather liable to bring about spontaneous combustion.

## SECTION III

### GLYCERINE

GLYCERINE is a water-white, very viscid liquid, having a specific gravity when pure of 1.2665; but it has such an affinity with water that it is difficult to obtain absolutely anhydrous glycerine, and the ordinary commercial glycerine generally has a specific gravity of 1.260 to 1.263, and contains a little water. It has a sweet taste, and was originally known in consequence as the "sweet spirit of oils," and in the glycerine industry the crude material is known as the "sweet water." With water it mixes in all proportions. The following table, showing the specific gravities and strengths of various mixtures of these two liquids, will be found useful:—

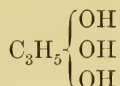
TABLE OF SPECIFIC GRAVITIES AND STRENGTHS OF AQUEOUS SOLUTIONS OF GLYCERINE.

Specific Gravity. 15° C.	Per cent. of Glycerine.	Specific Gravity. 15° C.	Per cent. of Glycerine.
1.2650	100	1.1990	75
1.2625	99	1.1855	70
1.2600	98	1.1715	65
1.2575	97	1.1570	60
1.2550	96	1.1430	55
1.2525	95	1.1290	50
1.2499	94	1.1155	45
1.2473	93	1.1020	40

Specific Gravity. 15° C.	Per cent. of Glycerine.	Specific Gravity. 15° C.	Per cent. of Glycerine.
1·2447	92	1·0885	35
1·2421	91	1·0750	30
1·2395	90	1·0620	25
1·2341	88	1·0490	20
1·2287	86	1·0365	15
1·2233	84	1·0240	10
1·2179	82	1·0120	5
1·2125	80		

Glycerine is also soluble in alcohol, but only slightly so in ether. A mixture of equal volumes of chloroform and alcohol dissolves it, but it is insoluble in chloroform, benzine, petroleum spirit, and oils. It is a powerful solvent for salts, etc., being nearly equal to water in this respect.

It is composed of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen in the proportions indicated by the formula  $C_3H_5O_3$ ; in its relationships it belongs to the alcohol group of organic compounds, has basic properties, and with the monobasic acids, such as hydrochloric acid, oleic acid, acetic acid, it is capable of forming compounds containing one, two, or three equivalents of the acids, the compound containing three equivalents being the normal one; hence glycerine must be a tribasic alcohol containing three equivalents of the radicle hydroxyl OH, and therefore having the formula—



and is essentially the hydroxide of the radicle glyceryl.

It may be mentioned that although by a looseness of expression, which is very common, glycerine is often spoken of as “the base of oils and fats,” yet glycerine as such does not exist in the oils, but is formed during the various processes of saponification

by the combination of the real base glyceryl  $C_3H_5$  with the radicle hydroxyl. The oils and fats are salts of this basic radicle glyceryl. Heated with strong sulphuric acid or with acid potassium sulphate it is dehydrated, and acrolein (acrylic aldehyde),  $C_3H_5COH$ , is evolved, recognisable by its peculiar odour.

Nitric acid acts on it energetically, forming a variety of products; nitro-glycerine, oxalic acid, glyceric acid, etc., being formed according to the strength of the acid used and the manner in which the operation is carried out. Heated with potassium permanganate in the presence of caustic potash, glycerine is converted into oxalic acid and carbonic acid, and, as this reaction takes place in a definite manner, it is taken advantage of for the quantitative estimation of glycerine.

When glycerine is heated with organic acids combination takes place, and ethers are formed known as "glycerides," and these have the special termination "in," as *acetin*, *olein*, *stearin*, and *palmitin*, with the prefix "mono," "di," and "tri," to show how many equivalents of the acid are combined with one equivalent of the base. Chemists, to show the analogy between glycerine and the alcohols, have given to it the systematic name "glycerol," but it has been thought better to use the more familiar name "glycerine" here.

## SECTION IV

### TEXTILE OILS

OILS are employed in every branch of the textile industries—in the treatment, spinning, and weaving of cotton, linen, jute, hemp, wool, and silk fabrics, and in the dyeing and printing of the same fabrics for a variety of objects; and it is intended here to discuss the uses of the oils in these trades. There is, however, one use to which oils are put that will not be here touched upon, and that is in the lubrication of the machines used in the spinning, weaving, etc., of the textile fabrics. This subject has already been dealt with in the author's *Lubricating Oils, Fats, and Greases*, and to that book the reader is referred.

#### A. WOOL OILS.

The first treatment which the wool fibre undergoes in its transformation from the raw or loose wool, as it comes from the sheep and back to the finished textile fabric, is that of scouring or cleansing, which is done by using soda or potash, with or without soap, with the object of removing the grease and dirt with which the wool is impregnated, the impurity ranging from 25 per cent. in the best and cleanest grades of wool to 60 per cent. in the commonest grades of greasy or pitchy wools.

Wool thus cleansed cannot, however, be conveniently spun or woven. The wool fibre has a scaly structure, shown in Fig. 5, taken from Franklin Beech's *Dyeing of Woollen Fabrics*,

and the scales on one fibre are liable to interlock with those of another fibre during the many manipulations through which the wool passes while being spun and woven; and this interlocking prevents that free motion of the fibres which is necessary for a perfect woollen thread to be spun.

In order to prevent this interlocking taking place the wool is oiled before it is spun, this oiling process being commonly called "batching." The oldest method of carrying out this operation was to spread the wool in layers on the floor of a room, and to sprinkle it with the oil, then to put another layer of wool down and to sprinkle this, and so on until all the wool

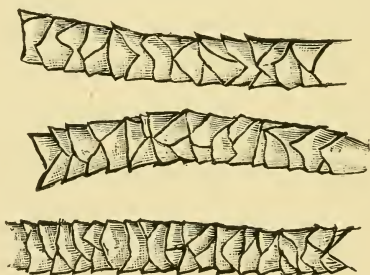


FIG. 5.—The Wool Fibre.

has been treated, when it is more or less raked about or piled into heaps with the object of getting the oil uniformly distributed through the mass of the wool. A more modern plan is to attach an oiling arrangement to the first machine the wool has to go through in order to spin it into a thread.

The oil at first applied to this purpose, and still largely used, was olive oil (see page 93), but this is expensive, and other cheaper oils were often substituted—rape oil, nut oil, etc. Then there was introduced oleic acid, in more or less crude qualities, a bye-product in the manufacture of glycerine and stearic acid from tallow; then the recovery of the soap and

grease from the waste wool washings, and the treatment of the recovered grease—"brown" or "Yorkshire" grease, as it is called—by distillation, caused the introduction of so-called wool oils or oleines, oily bodies of somewhat complex composition. Then under the name of "wool oils" there are used compounded oils formed by blending or mixing various oils together with a view of producing a cheaper article. Some of these oils—olive oil, cotton oil, rape oil, and linseed oil—will be found described under the head of "Animal and Vegetable Oils."

Many kinds of oil and oily products are available, and are in use for oiling wool, either alone or mixed together. In the choice of an oil for this purpose several considerations have to be taken into account. Simply regarded from the point of view of lubricating the wool fibre to enable it to be properly spun into yarn and woven into cloth, almost any kind of oil may be used, from the cheapest of hydrocarbon oils to the most expensive of vegetable oils. A discussion of these considerations will be of interest before dealing with the various kinds of wool oils in detail.

One of the first considerations of the wool manufacturer is the element of cost. The cheapest oils are the so-called mineral or hydrocarbon oils obtained from Scotch shale, American and Russian petroleums, and rosin by a variety of processes (*vide* the author's *Lubricating Oils, Fats, and Greases*), the better refined and heavier grades of which are suitable for oiling wool when simply regarded as lubricants; but other considerations come into play which militate against their use by themselves for this purpose, as will be seen presently. The lighter grades are not suitable, not possessing sufficient lubricating power.

The next class of oils as regards cost are the so-called oleines obtained by the distillation of recovered greases, or Yorkshire grease, and will be found described later on. These are much used, and are, on the whole, very serviceable, although not perfect oils for the work.

Then comes the oleic acid, supplied in various grades of purity, and often under the name of "cloth oil," which is obtained as a bye-product in the manufacture of glycerine and stearine from fats. These oleic acids are very satisfactory, and can safely be used for oiling wool.

Lastly, there are the various animal and vegetable oils, such as lard oil, tallow oil, olive oil, cotton oil, nut oil, etc., which are expensive; some are very suitable, in particular olive oil, which forms the typical wool oil.

A very important consideration in the selection and use of an oil for wool is connected with the operations of wool manufacture following on those of spinning and weaving. Woollen yarns and woollen cloths have to be dyed, and before this can be done the oil with which the wool has been treated must be removed. All oils can be extracted from wool by the use of ethereal solvents like benzoline, benzol, ether, carbon bisulphide, carbon tetra-chloride, etc., and such solvents have been used with more or less success. Unfortunately the solvents benzoline and benzol, which are cheap, are very inflammable, and a perfectly satisfactory extraction apparatus adapted to their use and free from risks of explosion has not yet been devised; while carbon tetra-chloride, which is free from this serious defect, is rather expensive. One trouble with all of them is that, owing to their very volatile character, it is difficult to construct an apparatus which will not permit much leakage, and therefore loss, of solvent taking place.

The process most commonly adopted for extracting the oil from the wool is a scouring one, employing soap as the principal agent, with or without the use of soda or potash. In this process advantage is taken of two factors—first, the emulsifying power of soap solutions on oils; second, the saponifying action of soda or potash on the oils. The more perfectly the emulsifying and saponifying actions go on, the more perfectly will the oils be removed from the wool. It is essential for perfect



dyeing that all—or, at anyrate, nearly all—the oil be removed, or otherwise the dye will be but imperfectly taken up by the wool, and streaks and patches on the material will be produced. The paraffin, petroleum, or rosin oils are not saponifiable: hence it is found that scouring wool, oiled with these oils, with soap and soda does not entirely remove them from the fibre; and for this reason they cannot well be used for oiling wool, although they are cheap.

The oleines previously referred to also frequently contain products which are unsaponifiable; if the quantity is not excessive, it has no strong influence in retarding the scouring action of the soap liquors; but if the quantity becomes excessive, then there is a great liability for some of the oil to be left in the wool, and in that case perfect results in the dyeing and finishing of the fabric cannot be got.

Sometimes cheap grades of “wool oils” are made by blending fatty oils, oleines, and hydrocarbon oils together; if the proportion of this last be too great, then these blended oils are not suitable for the purpose.

The fatty oils and oleic acid, being perfectly saponifiable, make the most satisfactory substances for oiling wool.

Another consideration is the question of the inflammability of the oils and the production of spontaneous combustion of the oiled wool. Several cases of fires have occurred in wool mills which could only be accounted for by oily wool spontaneously breaking out into flame. Experiments made on wool and cotton with different oils have shown that oils vary very much in this respect.

The fatty oils are divisible into three groups, without, however, any very marked line of division. There are, first, drying oils,—those which, like linseed oil or poppy-seed oil, when exposed in thin films to the air become dry and hard. Second, those which, like olive, sperm, or lard oil, always remain soft; these are the non-drying oils. And, thirdly, there are oils

which become viscid and thick, but not dry—the semi-drying oils, as they are called.

This property of drying appears to be closely connected with the power of the oils to absorb oxygen; thus Fox has shown (*Oil and Colourman's Journal*, 1884, p. 234) that linseed oil will take up 191 c.c. of oxygen for each gramme of oil, while olive oil will only take up 8·2 c.c., and cotton-seed oil 24·6 c.c.

The absorption of oxygen by oils leads to the development of heat. This is greatest when the absorption is greatest. When a little linseed oil is poured over a lump of cotton, the amount of surface exposed is very great, and consequently the action of the oxygen is great also. The heat that is developed may rise so high that the cotton will become charred, and not unfrequently burst into flames. This spontaneous combustion of oily fibre is a feature of great interest in the use of oils in textile mills. In these there are always large masses of cotton, wool, etc., lying about in heaps or covering the machine as fluff. Should these become covered, accidental or otherwise, with oil, and other conditions are favourable, then the oxidation of the oil may go on so rapidly and to such an extent that the fibre will burst into flame, and a fire is the result.

Now it has been found that only the fatty oils have this property of causing spontaneous combustion, the hydrocarbon oils, having no property of absorbing oxygen and combining with it, cannot cause spontaneous combustion; and, further, it has been shown by Galletly that mixing hydrocarbon with fat oils prevents the latter giving rise to the spontaneous combustion of fibrous bodies.

Thus Galletly obtained the following results by saturating a handful of cotton waste with various oils, wringing well to get rid of superfluous oil, then placing the oily waste in a chamber kept at a temperature of about 150° F., at which [oxidation begins :—

Boiled linseed oil.—One sample fired in 75 minutes, another in 105 minutes.

Raw linseed oil.—Two samples fired in four and five hours respectively.

Rape oil.—Sample put up at night was found to have been wholly consumed, box and waste, by next morning.

Olive oil.—Two samples fired in five and six hours respectively.

Lard oil fired in 100 minutes.

Sperm oil refused to ignite or to char the waste.

Mineral oils absolutely refused to ignite, and mixtures of 80 rape and 20 mineral and of 50 seal and 50 mineral did not, when placed in a warm chamber, develop a temperature sufficient to char the cotton.

More recently, Mr. W. M'D. Mackay has described, in the *Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry* for 1896, page 90, a form of apparatus devised by him for determining the degree of power possessed by various oils and oily products, to cause spontaneous combustion in oil.

The apparatus consists of a cylindrical metal water-bath; this one is made of copper, tinned inside.

Section shown, Fig. 6.

Dimensions—Outside, 8 in. high, 6 in. diameter; inside, 7 in. high, 4 in. diameter. Pipes A and B,  $\frac{1}{2}$ -in. internal diameter and 6 in. long, measured from the lid. The depth inside with the lid on is  $6\frac{1}{4}$  in. A lid (Fig. 7), packed with asbestos wool, fits on the top, and the tubes A and B serve to ensure a current of air down B and up A. Care should be taken in using the apparatus that the steam from the water jacket is neither sucked down B nor warms A. C is a cylinder made of a piece of wire gauze 24 to the inch, forming a roll 6 in. long and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. diameter. In the cylinder is placed seven grammes of cotton wool (ordinary bleached cotton wadding) previously soaked with fourteen grammes of the oil under

examination, the wool occupying the upper  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches of the cylinder.

The water being brought to the boiling-point, a thermometer is inserted in the oily wool contained in the gauze cylinder,

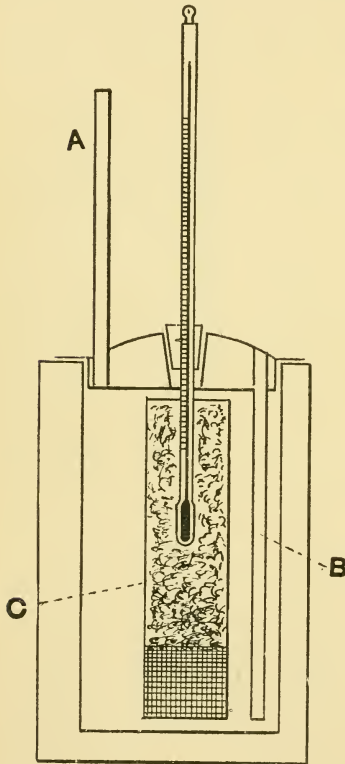


FIG. 6.

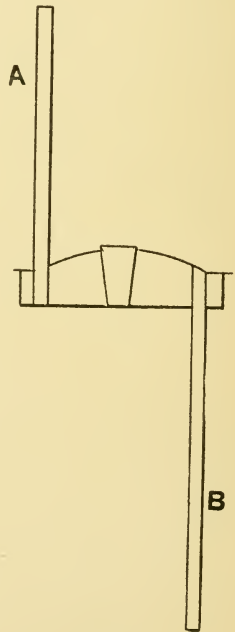


FIG. 7.

Mackay's Spontaneous Combustion Apparatus.

which is then placed in the bath, the thermometer being allowed to protrude through a cork in the opening shown in

the lid. The bath is left boiling, and the temperature attained read after one hour.

Any oil tested in this apparatus attaining a temperature of 100° C. before the expiry of one hour may be regarded as dangerous. In the table are given details as to the results of experiments made with cotton and olive oils, fatty acids from same, various commercial oleines, etc. It is of interest to note that fatty acids are more liable to cause spontaneous combustion than are neutral oils, while the addition of mineral oil decreases the tendency to spontaneous combustion.

Column E is not of much importance. In some cases the cotton fired, the thermometer being taken out when the temperature was observed to rise rapidly; in other cases, when probably firing would have taken place could the air have penetrated with sufficient rapidity to support active combustion, the temperature, after a rapid rise, began to go down, the experiment then being stopped. In column E, I have given the last recorded or the maximum temperature attained in each case.

The columns of importance are C and D. Any oil that disappears from column D, *i.e.* has either fired or attained a maximum temperature of over 200° C. before the expiration of two hours, may be regarded as dangerous; indeed, the first fifteen experiments may be taken to show that the oils in question are dangerous.

Nos. 16, 17, 18, and 19 are doubtful. The Belgian oleine, No. 19, for instance, though not rising above 100° C. in four hours, fired in five hours twenty minutes.

Nos. 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, and 25 may be taken as types of safe oils, the temperature in these cases not rising much above that of the bath, and after four to five hours declining.

The last, No. 25, is curious, as showing how a very dangerous oil, as shown in Nos. 2 and 3, becomes safe when 25 per cent. of a heavy hydrocarbon oil is mixed with it.

No.	A. Oil Examined.	B.	C.	D.
		Temp. in 1 hour. ° C.	Temp. in 1 h. 30 m. ° C.	Temp. in 2 hours. ° C.
1.	Cotton-seed oil fatty acids, pure	151	215	...
2.	Olive oil fatty acids, pure .	104	210	...
3.	Do. do. another sample	113	194	...
4.	Do. do. same as 3 .	98	108	203
5.	Do. do. 95 per cent. oleine	102	192	...
6.	Do. do. do. same as 5	102	203	...
7.	Do. do. 98 per cent. oleine	110	180	...
8.	Cotton-seed, pure . . .	100	164 h. m.	...
9.	Do. do. the same sample	111	272 1.25	...
10.	Do. do. do.	109	224 1.15	...
11.	Do. do. do.	111	225 1.35	...
12.	Cotton-seed oil, pure . . .	105	228 1.25	...
13.	White Australian oleine .	97	104	116
14.	Do. do. same as 13	96	103	113
15.	Oleine . . . . .	95	102	194
16.	Do. 93 per cent. oleine, French	95.5	100 1.35	104.5
17.	Do. 97 per cent. oleine .	95	98.5	100.5
18.	Australian oleine . . .	94.5	96	105
19.	Belgian oleine . . . .	92	94	94
20.	Oleine . . . . .	94.5	96	97.5
21.	Olive oil . . . . .	96	97.5	97.5
22.	Do. same as 21. From same sample	95.5	97	97.5
23.	Do. . . . .	95	97	97
24.	Do. same as 23 . . .	Not noted.	Not noted.	96
25.	75 per cent. olive fatty acids, same as 3 and 4, mixed with 25 per cent. American mineral	95	98	100.5

E.		F.			
Maximum Temperature.					
° C.	h. m.				
215	1.25	...	...	...	
335	1.50	...	...	...	
208	1.40	...	...	...	
272	2.30	...	...	...	
213	1.44	Free fatty acids,	56.5 per cent.	Unsaponifiable	4.9 per cent.
218	1.35	Do.	do.	do.	do.
180	1.30	Do.	98.1 per cent.		
234	1.35	Do.	0.5 per cent.		
272	1.25	Do.	do.		
224	1.15	Do.	do.		
279	1.40	Do.	do.		
228	1.25	Do.	0.0 per cent.	Neutralised with	soda and washed.
230	2.25				
308	3.10				
228	2.7	Free fatty acids,	7.4 per cent.	Unsaponifiable	10.7 per cent.
142	3.15	Do.	63.5 do.		
181.5	4.14	Do.	75.1 do.	22.9	do.
190	3.0	Do.	90.3 do.	2.2	do.
297	5.20	Do.	90.0 do.	6.4	do.
105.5	5.15	Do.	4.7 do.	35.8	do.
102	4.15	Do.	0.0 do.	Neutralised with	soda and washed.
103	4.0	Do.	do.	do.	
104	5.0	Do.	1.0 do.	roughly.	
103	5.30	Do.	do.	do.	
111.5	4.45				

With regard to concordance of the results obtained, it may be mentioned that there are given here the results of all the experiments made with this apparatus. Thus Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6-8, 9, 10, 11, 12-13, 14-21, 22, 23, 24 form groups by which the reliability of the methods may be estimated. Nos. 2, 3, and 4 show the greatest discordance.

At the instigation of the New England Cotton Manufacturers Association and of the Boston Manufacturers' Mutual Fire Insurance Company, Professor Ordway undertook the investigation of this subject of spontaneous combustion and oils, the outcome of which is the apparatus now used in America. The apparatus consists of an outer shell formed by a 6-inch wrought-iron tube, which can be closed at each end by discs of wood. Inserted into this tube is an inner 4-inch tube of sheet-iron, with over-lapping metal covers at the end. Thus there is left an air space of one inch around the inner tube and one of three inches at each end. The apparatus is conveniently placed on a tripod stand and is heated by a Bunsen burner. Three thermometers, which are inserted into the inner shell through the outer one, allow of the reading of the temperatures.

For purposes of testing an oil, 50 grms. of the oil are evenly distributed over, say, 50 grms. of cotton waste, and the waste carefully pushed into one end of the inner tube, and one thermometer inserted into the middle of the ball. A second ball of unoled waste is placed at the other end of the tube. On heating, the thermometer inserted into this blank waste should not rise above  $100^{\circ}$ - $101^{\circ}$  C., which can be easily controlled by the readings of the middle thermometer. The latter should be kept at about  $120^{\circ}$  C.

The results obtained by means of this apparatus have been of the greatest use for determining the cause of fires and for gauging the degree of safety of wool oils. For instance, the percentage of fatty oil which may be safely mixed with mineral oils can be easily determined. Thus neatsfoot oil



and best lard oil may be added to the extent of 50–60 per cent., while cotton oil should not be allowed beyond 25 per cent.

Shavings of leather, skeins of dyed yarn, or rolls of dyed cloth may be tested in the same way in this apparatus. Paper pulp, boards, and other combustible substances, when heated to a higher temperature, would indicate the temperature at which inflammation sets in.

It may be found useful in this connection to quote the order in which the schedule of the Fire Insurance Companies in this country arrange the oils.

Free from any extra charge are—olive, Gallipoli, and lard oils; oleine, saponified or distilled, not containing more than 10 per cent. of unsaponifiable matter; fish oil, or a manufactured oil purified by distillation or saponification (whatever this may mean), containing not more than 30 per cent. of unsaponifiable matter, and having a flash-point of not under 340° F. (167·8° C.). A higher rate is charged for manufactured oils containing more than 50 per cent., but not more than 50 per cent. of unsaponifiable matter. A still higher rate is charged for black recovered oil containing not more than 50 per cent. of unsaponifiable matter. The highest rate is charged for manufactured oils containing more than 50 per cent. of unsaponifiable matter, or mineral oil, oil of pine, linseed oil, rape oil, cotton-seed oil, or any other seed oil.

The production of spontaneous combustion in oiled wool or cotton fibres and fabrics is governed by many factors, and the exact conditions which lead to its development in the quickest manner are not thoroughly known. The character of the oils used has some influence, as has been already pointed out. Then the proportion of oil to textile material is not without some influence; if there be either too much or too little oil, then spontaneous combustion may not occur, for in the one case the excess of oil by its cooling action will prevent the

temperature from getting too high, while in the latter case the amount of oxidation is not enough to lead to such a rise in temperature as will cause the mass to inflame. The question of volume of the mass of oiled material cannot but have some influence, exactly in which direction is rather uncertain; but, probably, the greater the volume the greater the risk, for there is then more surface exposed to the oxidising action of the air on the oil than would be the case if the mass were somewhat compressed.

The presence or absence of moisture has some influence, and, so far, experience shows that the presence of a small amount of moisture tends to promote spontaneous combustion rather than to retard it. Probably the moisture acts as a carrier of oxygen to the oil, or else the high specific heat of the water enables it to accumulate much heat, and so specifically raise the general heat of the mass. It has been observed in the case of cotton fibres that bales which have got damp in the process of extinguishing the fire are very liable to burst out into flames, and the only way to avoid this is to open out the bales and allow the cotton to dry.

Then the general temperature of the place where the oiled material is will have some influence, for oxidation of the oils and the heating of the wool, etc., is more likely to occur when the general temperature is high than when it is low.

Whether the spontaneous combustion breaks out first in the centre of the mass or at the outside is not known with any degree of certainty. Cases have been met with when combustion has started on the outside, while in other cases the fire has started in the centre.

The question of the flash-point, or, perhaps more strictly, the firing-point, of the oil does not so much concern the production of spontaneous combustion as the extending the fire when it has broken out. The lower the flashing- and firing-points of an oil, the more rapidly does the oil spread over the surface

of bodies, because of its greater limpidity; but, also, the rapidity of extension of the fire is greater than with oils of high flashing- and firing-points.

It is not easy to fix a safe flashing-point having regard to the class of oils used in oiling wool, for the oleines and oleic acid have comparatively low flash-points, about  $320^{\circ}$  F., and the establishment of too high a standard would exclude these; yet a hydrocarbon oil with a flash-point of  $320^{\circ}$  F. is of comparatively low quality; good grades range from  $370^{\circ}$  to  $410^{\circ}$  F. in flash-point. The firing-point is always higher than the flash-point by from  $50^{\circ}$  to  $80^{\circ}$  F., varying in different classes of oil. An oil like olive, lard, neatsfoot, or cotton oils, if of good quality and fairly free from free fatty acid, will have a flash-point of  $470^{\circ}$  to  $500^{\circ}$  F., with a firing-point of from  $550^{\circ}$  to  $600^{\circ}$  F., so that these are, apart from the risk of spontaneous combustion, safe oils to use, for their firing-point is high, and, moreover, their spreading power is less than in the case of hydrocarbon oils. But the question of cost often precludes the use of these oils, although this extra cost may be counter-balanced by other advantages,—less liability to defective dyeing of the yarn or cloth on which the oil is used; greater value of the recovered oil or grease from the wool.

Where price is a consideration, the best oil to use in the oiling of wool, one with which the risk of spontaneous combustion is reduced to nothing, while the firing-risk is also slight, would be a mixture of 80 per cent. of good olive, lard, neatsfoot, or earth-nut oil with 20 per cent. of hydrocarbon oil, with a flash-point of  $420^{\circ}$  F.

Here will be described those oily products which are not used in soapmaking, but are applied in the woollen industry.

#### *Oleines. Wool Oils.*

The term "wool oil" is applied to a variety of oils to be used in the batching of wool; some of these, as will be more particularly

specified later on, are compounded oils, others are more or less crude oleic acid, while some are products obtained in the treatment of Yorkshire grease. To obtain the wool oils, the Yorkshire grease is subjected to distillation, which process will now be briefly described. The details of this description may not be applicable to every grease-distilling works, but will be sufficiently near to general practice for all present purposes.

The process of distillation is carried on in cast-iron stills (wrought-iron cannot be used, as it is rapidly corroded by the fatty acids present in the grease), similar in shape to tar stills, and which are connected with suitable condensing arrangements.

In most works superheated steam is used along with direct fire heat, its use giving a larger yield of more useful products, which are also of a better quality than when fire heat is used alone.

The stills are of about 1000 gallons capacity, and will hold something like four tons of grease. When beginning the distillations, fire heat is used alone until the water in the grease has been driven off, which will take ten to sixteen hours, after which the superheated steam is run in, and kept running into the still during the rest of the distillation.

After the water has come off, some grease gives off a small quantity of a light "spirit oil," others do not yield this product. After this comes the principal product, a thin limpid oil, or a pale yellow grease, known as "first distilled grease." This grease takes from twenty to twenty-four hours to come off; it is followed by a greenish oil, or "crude grease," which product is usually put back into the stills with a fresh quantity of grease, or occasionally made into very crude lubricating greases.

After about thirty-six hours from the beginning of the distillation a thick oil begins to appear, and when this occurs the fires are drawn, and the "pitch" which is left in the still is drawn off.

The following table shows the products and the quantities yielded:—

Quantity of grease taken—66 cwt. 3 qrs. 20 lb.

Water and loss	. 13 cwt.	3 qrs.	16 lb.	or 20·76 per cent.
Spirit oil	. . 2 „	3 „	0 „	4·10 „
First distilled grease	30 „	1 „	26 „	45·54 „
Green oil	. . 10 „	1 „	12 „	15·47 „
Pitch	. . . 9 „	1 „	22 „	14·13 „

The “first distilled grease” may be treated in two ways—(a) it may be again distilled, or (b) subjected to pressure, thus yielding two products, oleine and stearine.

(a) The first distilled grease obtained as described in the first distillation is now put back into the stills and treated as before, when two products are obtained—“second distilled grease” and “pitch.” The latter is softer than that obtained in the previous distillation, and is hence termed “soft pitch.” The principal object of this second distillation is to obtain products of a better quality and a purer colour. The first distilled grease yields about 96 per cent. of second distilled grease, and 4 per cent. of pitch.

The distilled greases obtained during the first and second distillations are collected in a tank and allowed to cool slowly, and kept at a temperature of 21° C. (70° F.) for some hours. By this means the stearine it contains separates out in a granular form, which facilitates the process of pressing. A great deal depends upon the careful cooling of the grease to obtain the maximum yield of oleine with the minimum amount of damage to the press cloths.

This operation of “seeding” is sometimes done in shallow metal trays placed on racks in a slightly inclined position, the racks being in a room kept at from 21° to 25° C. (70° F. to 77° F.),—the oleine which drains out of the stearine is generally considered to be of better quality than that obtained by pressure,

and is commonly designated "No. 1 oil." The principal objection to this process is the rapid corrosion of the metal trays, while the metal dissolved in the olein causes the discoloration of the latter.

The grease is now put into canvas cloths and made into cakes, which are put between the plates of a hydraulic press, where they are subjected to a pressure of about three tons to the square inch for six hours; the liquid oleine No. 2 is thus pressed out, the stearine being left behind in a solid cake. The grease yields about 66 per cent. of oleine, and 34 per cent. of stearine. The oleine is turbid as it issues from the press, and is clarified by filtering through coco-nut mats.

The distilled greases are of a pale-yellow colour, and are granular in structure. Two samples examined by the author had the following composition:—

	First Distilled Grease.	Second Distilled Grease.
Water . . . . .	0·98	1·04
Free acid . . . . .	63·12	66·56
Unsaponifiable matter . . . . .	12·88	13·24
Neutral oil . . . . .	23·02	19·16
	100·00	100·00

It is interesting to note that the second distilled grease contains more free acid and unsaponifiable matter than the first distilled grease. This might be expected, since the distillation of grease must result in the partial decomposition of the neutral oils it contains, leading to the formation of acid bodies and hydrocarbons. This is also shown in the analysis of the wool oils given below.

*Oleine.*—This product, which is better known as "wool oil," comes from the press as a pale-coloured body, but gradually it assumes a pale-brown colour. This coloration is undoubtedly

brought about by the presence of traces of iron in the oil, derived from the metal of the press and of the tanks in which it is stored. Oleine which has been pressed and kept in glass bottles does not alter in colour.

When filtered through fine filter-cloths it is perfectly clear and transparent, but very often oleines are slightly turbid, and this turbidity is increased in cold weather. Oleine has a peculiar characteristic odour which is unmistakable.

Some works only send out one quality of oleine, others make three qualities : No. 1, drained from the second distilled grease ; No. 2, pressed from the same ; and No. 3, pressed from first distilled grease.

These oils are mostly used for oiling wool, hence their name. They have been used for making lubricating greases and for soapmaking, but do not answer satisfactorily for this purpose.

Oleines, even from the same maker, vary very much in composition, which depend, as might be expected, on the composition of the grease from which they are distilled.

The following table contains some analyses of several samples of wool oils :—

	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
Spec. grav. at 15·5° C.	0·9031	0·898	0·905	0·9000	0·9091
Do. do. 98° C.	0·852	0·8403	0·849	0·8431	...
	Per cent.	Per cent.	Per cent.	Per cent.	Per cent.
Water . . . . .	1·12	2·33	1·38	2·51	...
Free acid . . . . .	55·02	56·26	53·65	59·83	64·42
Unsaponifiable matter	34·66	29·46	16·32	38·92	9·95
Neutral oil . . . . .	9·20	11·95	28·65	...	25·63
	100·00	100·00	100·00	101·26	100·00

These figures can only be taken as approximately correct ; the free acid is calculated as oleic acid, while probably there

are other acids present, both of higher and lower combining weights. Nos. 1, 2, and 3 oils in the above table are analyses of the three qualities of oil previously noted.

Some people consider that the presence of the unsaponifiable matter indicates adulteration with mineral oil. Such a mixture would be very difficult of detection, and one would have to pay more attention to the physical rather than the chemical properties of the oil obtained after saponification and separation of the neutral oil and fatty acid present in the wool oil.

The flashing-points of the three qualities of wool oil are given in the following table:—

	No. 1 Oil.	No. 2 Oil.	No. 3 Oil.
Vapourising temperature .	212° F.	203° F.	172° F.
Flashing-point . . . .	338° F.	342° F.	322° F.
Burning-point . . . .	386° F.	397° F.	356° F.

It would be advisable to reject any oil that has a lower flashing-point than 330° F. for oiling wool.

The wool oils or oleines obtained by distillation from crude wool greases as just described are distinguished from other wool oleines by containing cholesterine or cholesterol, and this can be detected by the following colour-tests:—

About  $\frac{1}{2}$  a gramme of the oleine is taken and mixed with 2 c.c. of chloroform and 2 c.c. of sulphuric acid, and the mixture well shaken. The chloroform layer is coloured blood-red to purple from the presence of cholesterine, while the sulphuric acid layer has a strong green fluorescence. The addition of more chloroform to the mixture causes it to turn blue. A similar test is to add to the chloroform solution 20 drops of acetic anhydride, and then one or two drops of concentrated sulphuric acid, when a violet-pink coloration is obtained.

Many oleines, both from wool grease and oleic acid, are sold by the makers of certain specified qualities as containing 60



per cent., 70 per cent., 80 per cent., etc., of saponifiable matter, consisting of all free oleic acid and any unchanged neutral oil.

An examination of these products for free acid, unsaponifiable matter, etc., is carried out in the manner detailed in the chapter on "Oil Analysis."

### *Oleic Acid.*

Oleic acid is a bye-product in the manufacture of stearic acid and palmitic acid from tallow and palm-oil for candlemaking. There are two processes employed in this industry, which are briefly described in the following paragraphs:—

The most important process is what is called the "autoclave method." The autoclave is a strong, cylindrical iron or copper vessel, capable of standing a considerable pressure, and adapted to be heated with either steam or fire. Into the autoclave is placed a mixture of the oil or fat, water, and lime, in suitable proportions, and the mixture is subjected to combined pressure and heat. The result is the decomposition of the fatty material, and the forming of an aqueous solution of glycerine, some lime soap, and free fatty acid. The aqueous solution is run off and used for the preparation of glycerine; the mixture of lime soap and fatty matter is collected, treated with hydrochloric acid, which decomposes the lime soap and liberates the fatty acid of the same. The whole mass of fatty acid is collected and dealt with as hereafter described.

The oleine (oleic acid) and the stearine (stearic or palmitic acid) are often commercially designated as "saponified stearines," etc., in contradistinction to those got by the distillation process.

The distillation method is carried out in this manner: the fats or oils are melted and then mixed with a certain proportion of sulphuric acid, the mixture is next placed in a still and distilled, a current of superheated steam passing through

the still ; there distils over water containing glycerine and fatty acid,—the former is used for making refined glycerine, the latter is dealt with as described below. The oleine (oleic acid) and stearine (stearic or palmitic acid) obtained in this process are commercially designated as “distilled stearines” or “oleines,” but there is virtually no material difference between the saponified and distilled products, except perhaps in the case of the oleines, and here only a slight difference, which will be noted presently.

The mass of fatty acid obtained by either the autoclave saponification process or the distillation process varies in composition according to the character of the oil or fat used. Thus if tallow has been used, it will consist chiefly of a mixture of oleic acid and stearic acid ; if palm oil has been used, of a mixture of oleic acid and palmitic acid, and so on with other oils.

Virtually the manufacturer simply regards it as being composed of two products only : one liquid, chiefly oleic acid, which he calls “oleine” ; the other solid, which he calls “stearine.” To separate these two products he maintains the acids at a moderate heat (100° F.) for some time, when the stearine separates out in grains. The grainy mass is placed in stout canvas bags and subjected to hydraulic pressure, when the oleine flows out, leaving the stearine behind.

The oleine or oleic acid is sold to wool manufacturers for oiling wool, besides other uses. The stearine need not be considered further.

*Oleic Acid, Oleine, Cloth Oil.*—The oleic acid so obtained is sold under a variety of names—“oleic acid,” “oleine,” “brown cloth oil,” “brown wool oil,” etc. etc. In some cases just as it comes from the press, in others blended with other oils.

It may vary in colour from a pale straw — when it is known particularly as “pale oleine” or “pale oleic acid,” and is the article that should be used on the best wool—to a

reddish-brown liquid of various hues, having a sharp and somewhat characteristic odour. The specific gravity varies from 0.898 to 0.905 at 60° F. The proportion of actual oleic acid contained may vary from 84 to 97 per cent. There is always some unchanged oil, varying in quantity from 2 to perhaps 10 per cent., and larger quantities have been recorded. There are also small quantities of unsaponifiable bodies of a hydrocarbon nature which are, so to speak, natural to the product, and have been produced by decomposition of the fat during the process of saponification or distillation; these vary in amount from 1 to 5 per cent., being perhaps greater in distilled oleines than in saponified oleines. The following table shows the analysis of several commercial oleic acids:—

	Pale Oleic Acid.	Brown Oleic Acid.	Brown Cloth Oil.	Brown Cloth Oil.	Cloth Oil.
Colour . . .	Straw.	Pale brown.	Brown.	Brown.	Dark brown.
Specific gravity .	0.904	0.899	0.901	0.902	0.903
Free acid . . .	97.8	96.3	93.8	89.4	92.2
Unsaponifiable oil .	1.0	1.3	3.9	2.0	3.2
Free oil . . .	1.2	2.5	2.3	8.6	5.6

#### *Blended Wool Oils.*

Besides the simple oils and oleines described in previous sections, and which are certainly the best to use, especially in view of the recovery of the oil after use and the better value of the recovered grease, various blended wool oils are frequently sold. The composition of these is very various, but practically they are compounded of—

1. Animal and vegetable oils,
2. Oleines, *i.e.* oleic acid, etc.,
3. Hydrocarbon oils,

the exact composition being largely dependent on the price at which it is to be sold. The first class of oils is the most

expensive, the last class the cheapest, and the cheaper the oil the more of this class must be present.

Viewed simply as lubricants for wool, they are efficient enough; the presence of the hydrocarbon oil reduces the risks of spontaneous combustion of oiled wool, but it is generally considered by insurance companies that the fire risk in another direction is increased, as these oils spread more easily than fat oils and are more readily inflammable. To some extent the flash-point is a measure of degree of inflammability, and this should not be below 320° F.

Oils which contain large proportions of hydrocarbon oils are not so readily scoured out of the wool on account of the unsaponifiable nature of the hydrocarbon oils, and so the dyeing properties of the wool are reduced or deteriorated, and there is more liability for the colour of the dyed fabric to come up unlevel or uneven in patches of dark and light places.

Further, the grease recovered after using such oils contains much more unsaponifiable matter, and is less valuable in consequence.

In the chapter on "Oil Analysis" will be found details of methods for determination of specific gravity, saponifiable oil, free acid, and unsaponifiable oil, in such blended wool oils.

There have been used what may be termed "emulsified wool oils," or mixtures of a variety of ingredients—brown grease, oleines, hydrocarbon oils, with water and an alkali. The only good feature about these is the low price, otherwise they are rather unsatisfactory in many respects. They are now used only to a very limited extent, if at all.

## OILS FOR COTTON-DYEING, PRINTING, AND FINISHING.

In the colouring by dyeing or printing of cotton fabrics, and in the process of finishing thereof, there are used various oils and oily preparations for various objects or purposes, without, however, any general feature connecting these one with another.

## B. COLOUR OIL.

Oil has been added to the printing pastes—"colours," as they are technically called—of the calico printer for a long period. This oil has, in most cases, only one purpose to serve, that of preventing frothing, which happens in many cases owing to the starch, British gum, gum tragacanth, or albumen which has been added as a thickening agent to the colour, or to tannic acid added with some colours as a mordant for the dyestuff which is employed. Such frothing, if it occurs, leads to poor, thin, and uneven effects being printed on the cloth.

In some other cases, more particularly with what are called "mordant colours"—alizerine, logwood, Persian berries, alizerine blue, etc.—the oil not only prevents frothing, but it may enter into combination with the dyestuff and lead to fuller and brighter colour effects being obtained.

Olive oil has long been the standard oil for this purpose, and it certainly does its work effectually in every way. Olive oil has already been described in pp. 93 *et seq.*

Of late years several preparations under the general denomination of "colour oil" have been offered to calico printers. For these there is no standard composition. The best of them are mixtures of a hydrocarbon oil and either olive or rape oil; some consist of hydrocarbon oils only. The following are typical examples:—

## 1.

70 parts	890 Scotch oil.
15 „	885 American oil.
15 „	olive oil.

## 2.

80 parts	pale 865 American oil.
10 „	Russian spindle oil.
10 „	rape oil.

## 3.

80 parts	pale 865 American oil.
20 „	Russian spindle oil.

Where price is not a great element, and it is desired to use an oil that shall not tint the printing colour or the cloth in any way, the white petroleum oils which are now made could be used with advantage.

These blended colour oils are found to prevent frothing very well. The quantity used is not large, varying from 2 to 5 per cent. of the weight of the printing colour.

## C. TURKEY-RED OILS.

In the dyeing and printing of Turkey and alizarine reds on cotton, the dyeing and printing of paranitraniline red and similar developed colours on cotton, in the printing of various colours with such mordant dyes as alizarine, alizarine cyanine, alizarine yellows, chrome yellow, galloeyanine, etc., oil is used as an essential constituent of the process, although it is not yet definitely known what part the oil plays in the production of the finished colour; but it is a well-recognised fact that when oil is used, fuller, brighter, and faster colours are obtained than when oil is not used.

In past times olive oil, more particularly that variety known

as "Gallipoli oil" in England and "*huile tournante*" in France, which is of rather poor quality and contains much free fatty acid (the author has found 20 per cent. in some samples) was almost solely used for this purpose, and rarely any other oil.

In use the oil is mixed with water and a little soda, when an emulsion is formed in which the cotton is worked. The presence of free fatty acid in the oil enables this emulsion to form more readily and be more permanent in character than if it were absent, for it combines with the soda to form a soap. It is necessary, in order to obtain the best results, that the emulsion should contain free oil and some free fatty acid as well as soap. Soap will not answer the purpose, and only enough is produced to give a good emulsion, as then the cotton becomes more evenly impregnated with the oil, and therefore more level and uniform shades are obtained.

John Mercer introduced and patented in 1846 the use of sulphated olive oil prepared by the action of sulphuric acid on olive oil (see below), one advantage being that this product being soluble in water, better results were obtainable. John Mercer's discovery remained in abeyance or was not employed by the great bulk of calico printers and dyers for many years, but about 1870-1875 there came into use sulphated castor oil, and this has now quite superseded olive oil in the production of Turkey reds and alizarine reds and other colours on cotton. It is made and sold under a variety of names. Turkey-red oil or alizarine oil are the most general, then oleine, soluble oil, dyeing oil, red oil, etc. The method of preparing this product will be given presently. It may be mentioned here that as commonly sold it is an oily liquid, mixing readily with water, and containing on an average 50 per cent. oil, 1 per cent. alkali, 1 to 2 per cent. salt, and 48 per cent. water. Some makes contain up to 75 per cent. oil, and the particular variety sold as soluble oil often contains only 25 per cent. of oil. As the oil is the most valuable part of the product, it ought to be

bought to contain a definite quantity of oil and the price regulated accordingly.

This sulphated castor oil is not difficult to make, and many users, especially those calico printers and dyers employing a chemist, make it themselves. When purchased from makers, buyers would find it better to buy the higher strengths and so save in cost of freight.

#### TURKEY-RED OIL. ALIZARINE OIL. OLEINE.

There is used in the dyeing and calico-printing trades, under the above names, a preparation of castor oil which is of comparatively modern introduction. Its use has been found to materially increase the brilliancy of Turkey reds, alizarine reds, and many printed colours, while in recent years its use in connection with direct dyes like Congo red, benzopurpurine, etc., has been found advantageous in the direction of producing more level and uniform shades on unbleached cotton. In the Holliday process of producing colours direct on cotton, as, for instance, the well-known Para reds and alpha clarets, the use of Turkey-red oil seems necessary if bright and fast colours are to be produced.

Formerly there was used in the dyeing and printing of Turkey red and madder reds on cotton a rather poor grade of olive oil, particularly Gallipoli oil, which contained a large proportion of free acid, and was therefore easily emulsified by the use of a solution of soda. In France this was known as "*huile tournante*." The introduction of the modern class of oils—"sulphated oils," as they are called, on account of the fact that they are produced by the action of strong sulphuric acid on castor oil—is due to John Mercer, who patented the use of olive oil in this connection. This patent was taken out in 1846, and is as follows:—

"The first part of our invention consists in preparing what



we call 'sulphated oil,' and applying the same to the processes herein mentioned. For this purpose we take at the rate of one part by measure of sulphuric acid of commerce for every eight measures of olive oil; we mix the same, and stir them frequently during ten days; we then add three or four gallons of water, stir the mixture well, adding three or four pounds of common salt, and then allow the whole to stand; the oil will separate, and may be drawn off clear. This, for convenience of description, we will call "sulphated oil *A*." For each gallon of this oil, we take nine gallons of solution of hypochlorite of soda, which we prepare in the following manner:—

"We take sixteen pounds of crystallised carbonate of soda of commerce, dissolved in two quarts of water and ten gallons of chloride of lime (bleaching powder) liquor at 12° Tw.; we mix these materials well together, and after allowing the same to stand, we draw off the clear liquor, which we employ as above mentioned. We heat the mixture of sulphated oil *A* and chloride of soda by any convenient means, preferring a pipe, heated by steam, and boil the mixture until the same ceases to bleach a piece of cotton dyed of a pale-blue colour by indigo. Or, in place of applying heat, we use a diluted acid (preferring sulphuric diluted in the proportion of one measure of concentrated acid to twenty-four measures of water), and we add and stir in the diluted acid in portions at intervals, allowing time to prevent as much as possible the escape of free chlorine; and when the mixture no longer bleaches a piece of cotton dyed light blue by indigo, the process will be complete. Or we treat the sulphated oil *A* with atmospheric air and steam, for which purpose we mix at the rate of one gallon of the oil with one gallon of water, and force streams of heated atmospheric air through a suitably perforated pipe or other suitable apparatus, such as are well understood and have before been used when applying streams of heated air or steam to fluids for other purposes. We prefer that the air should be heated to 220° F.,

and keep up the process for ten days. We find that the process is quickened by adding one gallon of cow-dung water and one gallon of bran water made with two pounds of bran ; or, instead thereof, one-eighth of a gallon of linseed oil ; or we use eight ounces of common salt. When using cold atmospheric air we employ steam by perforated tube, so that the agitation of the surface favours the action of the atmosphere on the oil ; but this process of oxidation is slow when compared with forcing heated air through the oil, or when compared with causing streams of steam and cold air alternately to pass through the oil. The oil, instead of being first sulphated as above explained, may be treated in the same manner, and we find it desirable to prepare both sulphated oil and oil without that process, as above explained, and we use them as hereinafter described. The first we call 'sulphated oxidised oil,' and the others we call 'oxidised oil.'

"Another mode of manufacturing sulphated oxidised oil, according to our invention, is as follows :—We mix at the rate of one part by measures of strong sulphuric acid with eight measures of olive oil, and stir the mixture often during twenty-four hours ; to this mixture we add at intervals twenty ounces of chlorate of potash, dissolved in two quarts of boiling water, to each gallon of oil, and stir until the action ceases. We then wash away the acids and salts by water, by stirring in two gallons of water for each gallon of oil ; then allow them to stand, and draw off the water, and repeat the washing in the same manner with two more gallons of water. Or (instead of the chlorate of potash above mentioned) we employ forty ounces of bichromate of potash dissolved in five pints of water, and proceed in the same manner as before described. Or, in place of the above, we employ forty ounces of nitrate of soda, or of potash, in the state of powder, and one pint of water, and proceed in the manner above described. By either of the above processes we obtain a preparation of sulphated oxidised

oil; and having prepared the oil as above described, and two quarts of oxidised oil, to these we add twelve gallons of pearl-ash liquor of 2° Tw. The goods or fabrics are to be impregnated with this oil liquor four times, and dried after each time in a hot flue or stove. The goods or fabrics are then to be impregnated twice with pearl-ash liquor of 6° Tw., and dried in a hot stove or flue after each time of impregnating, then finishing at the temperature of 180° F. for upwards of three hours; the goods or fabrics are then to be rinsed in pearl-ash liquor of 1° Tw., then washed, and afterwards dried at about 140° F.; the goods are then ready for the usual mordants and after processes, as well understood."

John Mercer used olive oil for making his sulphated oil, but practical experience has since shown that castor oil gives by far the best results. The action of the sulphuric acid goes on more regularly and smoothly, there is not the same amount of the charring action which, in the case of olive, oil causes loss of material as well as discoloration of the final product. If charring does occur, it is due to faulty manipulation, as, for instance, running the acid into the oil in too large a quantity at once, when a considerable rise of temperature takes place, or using too large a quantity of sulphuric acid. Other oils, such as cotton oil and corn oil, have been tried because of their being cheaper than castor oil, but they have been found unsuitable. The action of the acid on these oils is too energetic, and dark-coloured products are the result. Sometimes small quantities of other oils, as, for instance, olive, cotton, maize, mineral, or rosin, oils are added to the castor oil to produce a cheaper product, but the results are not good.

While in the main the makers of these oils all follow the same general plan, yet there may be small differences between them in carrying out, such as using different proportions of oil and acid, varying methods of mixing them together, varying

times of settlement and modes of washing the acidified oil and neutralising it afterwards.

These Turkey-red oils, alizarine oils, or oleines are generally sold as containing 50 per cent. of oil. Sometimes stronger preparations, say up to 70 per cent. of oil, are made and sold. At others a 33 per cent. oil is occasionally supplied. For practical purposes, as regards ease of preparation, cost of freight, ease of handling, etc., a 50 or 60 per cent. oleine is a satisfactory strength.

The process of manufacture is comparatively simple, and requires no elaborate plant. A wooden tank or barrel of a suitable size, according to the quantity of oil which is to be made, is necessary. This should be of a capacity of from two and a half to three times the volume of the oil to be treated; thus if 40 gallons of oil are to be dealt with, a tank of at least 100 gallons would be provided, for practically the quantity of the finished product will be twice that of the oil started with. There are required also tanks or vessels to hold the solution of caustic soda or ammonia used, with suitable measuring vessels and test glasses. The vat or barrel in which the preparation is made should have a tap fitted in the bottom end for running-off purposes, and if the bottom be slightly inclined to the tap, so much the better. It is a good plan to have a gauge fitted to it, so as to be able to measure the quantity of liquid in the vat or barrel at any time.

The following is a general description of the process; by using it with the quantities given a very good product is obtained:—

40 gallons of castor oil of fairly good quality are run into the vat; 80 lb. of strong sulphuric acid are then weighed out and run into the oil in a thin stream, or in small quantities at a time, stirring well into the oil. The whole operation ought to take at least an hour, and after all the acid has been run in, the stirring should be kept up for half an hour so as to get the

oil and acid well mixed together. The mixture is now left at rest for a period of not less than twenty-four hours, or a longer period if more convenient.

After this standing there is added to the oil mass 40 gallons of water, which is well stirred in until a uniform mass of a creamy colour without any dark streaks is obtained. Too much attention cannot be given to the effectual mixing of this water with the oil mass. The whole is now again left to stand for not less than twenty-four hours, at least, although a little longer period is advisable. In winter thirty-six hours will be required. At the end of this time the mass will have separated out into two layers, one of oil at the top, the other of an aqueous acid layer at the bottom. This is run off by means of the tap which has been fixed at the bottom of the vessel.

It is at this point in the process that makers often vary in their methods, some finish it off at this point, others give a second washing, using this time a strong solution of common salt containing 1 to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lb. salt per gallon, working this in the same manner as the first washing—the idea being to eliminate as much of the sulphuric acid as possible. There is no great advantage in giving this salt solution treatment.

There is now prepared a solution of caustic soda of  $40^{\circ}$  Tw. strength. This solution is now poured into the acidified oil slowly and with constant stirring; at first a creamy mass is formed, then dark streaks will show themselves, increasing in number as the caustic solution is poured in; finally the whole mass of liquid will become clear and transparent, when the addition of the soda solution is stopped. Usually about 10 gallons of the caustic soda liquor will be required, but the proportion will vary from time to time on account of varying degrees of action of the acid on the oil, due to differences of temperature, rate of mixture, time of standing, amount of washing, etc. The preparation of the oil is finished

by adding enough water to bring up the volume of 75 gallons. If the addition of the water makes the oil milky in appearance, the addition of a little more soda solution will restore the transparency.

Some makers use both caustic soda and ammonia in preparing their Turkey-red oils. In this case there is used about three-fourths of the amount of caustic soda required for complete neutralisation, and a mixture of 1 gallon liquid ammonia with 1 gallon of water is added until complete neutralisation is effected.

If sufficient water is not added in the first washing, or sufficient time is not allowed for settling, there is a liability for an excess of sulphuric acid to be left in the oil. This forms sodium sulphate with the caustic soda, the presence of which gives rise to two faults—first, the oil is turbid in appearance; and, second, there is a tendency for the oil to separate into two layers, one of watery liquid at the bottom, the other of clear oil at the top. This latter separation is also liable to occur if sufficient caustic soda to neutralise the acidity of the oil has not been used, and therefore the oil is left on the acid side.

The use of ammonia for neutralisation has certain advantages, especially in the finishing and printing of steam colours, because the alkali volatilises and leaves only the free fatty acid on the cloth.

The reason why castor oil has come to be selected as the most suitable for Turkey-red dyeing is its property of forming a soluble soap with a minimum proportion of alkali. Solutions of other fatty oils give emulsions rather than clear solutions, when the proportion of alkali falls much below that required for complete neutralisation. Again, the decomposition of the oil by the action of sulphuric acid is more complete with castor oil than with any other oil which can be used, and maximum decomposition is essential to the achievement of the best results. A certain proportion of undecomposed oil has, however, the

advantage that it lessens the tendency to frothing, and the decomposition by means of sulphuric acid in the case of castor oil provides for the ready attainment of this condition.

The proportion of sulphuric acid to castor oil used in making the oil has an influence in determining the quantity of caustic soda used to neutralise the resulting acidified oil, and in the solubility of the finished product. To make a good, clear, and fairly soluble oil, not less than one part of acid should be used to five parts of oil—that is, 20 per cent. of acid, as in the process detailed above. When only 10 per cent. of acid is used, only 21 per cent. of the alkali solution is required to neutralise, and the mixture, after standing some time, sets to a solid, which does not freely dissolve in water, and only forms a very milky mass. When 15 per cent. of acid is employed, a soluble oil is got, but this forms a milky emulsion with water, and does not clear. When 25 per cent. of acid is used, then the acidified oil takes 30 to 32 per cent. of the caustic soda solution to neutralise, and gives an oil which is freely soluble in water. The use of too great an excess of acid should be avoided, for it increases the quantity of soda required, while the acidified oil becomes more freely soluble in water, and there is then a greater risk of some of the oil passing away in the wash-waters, and so being lost.

Commercial Turkey-red oil, alizarine oil, or oleine is a fairly limpid fluid, rather more viscid than water, but less so than castor oil; in colour it resembles the latter liquid, and its odour is characteristic. It mixes freely with water in all proportions, giving slightly opalescent solutions, the clearness or transparency of which depends entirely upon the degree of alkalinity of the oil. The specific gravity is rather more than that of water being 1.0294. A sample of such an oil contained—

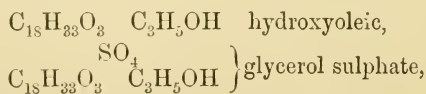
48.44	per cent.	water.
1.49	do.	sodium.
47.59	do.	fatty matter.
2.48	do.	sodium sulphate.

The chemical composition of this peculiar oily product has been the subject of investigation at the hands of many chemists, whose results and conclusions differ somewhat one from the other; this is what might naturally be expected, because there are many factors operating during its preparation which will cause it to vary. Ratio of acid to oil, length of time of action, temperature and action of mass, will be found to vary from time to time, and will all have some influence in affecting the composition of the final product. Many of the views enunciated by those who have considered this question are of a speculative character, for the difficulties of research as to the constitution of Turkey-red oil are very great.

The fatty matter of this oil is certainly present in three forms—first, as unchanged oil, which is not soluble in water, but is readily emulsified; second, as free fatty acid; and third, as sulphonated or sulphated fatty acids,—and it is largely as to the nature of these that observers differ from one another.

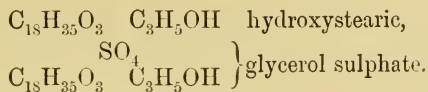
A brief résumé of the principal opinions expressed by those chemists who have given attention to the matter will be of interest. It is perhaps only fair to emphasise the fact that, although nominally they have been working on the same oil, yet, owing to the factors of variation mentioned above, the actual products may have been really different.

Liechti and Suida were among the earliest chemists to express any opinion on this subject. They regard the soluble part of Turkey-red oil to be glycerol sulphates, which, if the oil has been made from olive oil, will be partly derived from hydroxyoleic acid and partly from hydroxystearic acid. The former has the formula—



the latter is





More recent work has thrown some doubt on this point, partly because these must yield glycerine on saponification, and there is little glycerine in Turkey-red oil.

Muller Jacobs considers that the action of sulphuric acid is a sulphonating action, that is, there is introduced the group  $\text{HSO}_3$ , and thereby the fatty acid is rendered soluble in water. Thus the principal constituent of an olive-oil product would be hydroxystearin sulphonic acid,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{33}\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ,  $\text{COOH}$ , while that in a castor-oil product would be  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{31}\text{OH}$ ,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ,  $\text{COOH}$  hydroxyolein sulphonic acid.

Benedict considers the products to be sulphuric ethers, whose constitution is shown in the formulæ  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{34}\text{O}$ ,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ,  $\text{COOH}$  hydroxystearin sulphuric ether, or  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{32}\text{O}$ ,  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ ,  $\text{COOH}$  hydroxyolein sulphuric ether. By boiling with strong hydrochloric acid, these products are decomposed into sulphuric acid and hydroxystearic or hydroxyoleic acids.

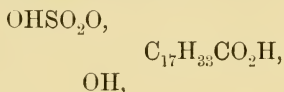
Juillard, who has made some rather extensive researches on this oil, has come to the conclusion that one result of the action of the sulphuric acid is polymerisation of the ricinoleic acid of the castor oil, and that di-, tri-, and penta-ricinoleic acids are formed, and that these are combined with the sulphuric acid. Scheurer-Kestner also agrees with Juillard as to the formation of polymers. Besides these polymers, Juillard has isolated other bodies, and he gives the following list of acid bodies, etc., present in Turkey-red oil made from castor oil.

The different products formed by the action of sulphuric acid on ricinoleic acid are as follows:—

1. Ricinoleic sulphuric acid,  $\text{OHSO}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{32}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ , is a dibasic acid, stable only in dilute solution, concentrated solutions readily decomposing into sulphuric acid and ricinoleic acid. It has the characteristic property of forming acid salts when treated

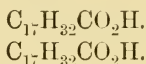
with solutions of almost any salt, *e.g.* on agitating its solution with potassium chloride, acid potassium, "ricino-sulphate," and HCl result. The corresponding sodium salt was formerly erroneously described as diricinolein sulphuric anhydride.

2. Dihydroxystearo-sulphuric acid—



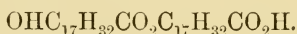
almost always accompanies 1., and possesses similar properties.

3. Dibasic diricinoleic acid—

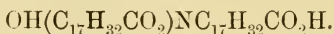


A thick liquid, soluble in alcohol. Its methyl and ethyl salts, however, are almost insoluble in alcohol, and on this property is based a method of separation of this from other acids, particularly from isoricinoleic acid. It is very stable, and is not saponified by boiling alkalis.

4. Monobasic diricinoleic acid—



This is the first member of the series of polyricinoleic acids having the general formula—



When castor oil is treated with sulphuric acid in the proportions of one part acid (98 per cent.) to eight parts of castor oil, the product consists almost entirely of these polyricinoleic acids, while with a larger proportion of sulphuric acid, isoricinoleic and dibasic diricinoleic acids chiefly result.

5. Dioxystearic acid—



It melts at 66° to 68° V., and is very soluble in alcohol and ether.

6. A solid acid which melts at 70° C., and is soluble in alcohol and ether, answers to the formula C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>70</sub>O<sub>7</sub>, and appears to be a molecular compound of dihydroxystearic and ricinoleic.

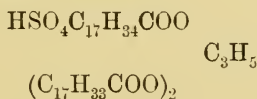
7. Isoricinoleic acid, C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>34</sub>O<sub>3</sub>. An oily liquid, soluble in alcohol and ether. It is distinguished from ricinoleic acid by its solubility in petroleum ether, and appears to be a ketonic acid with formula—



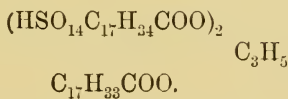
or perhaps—



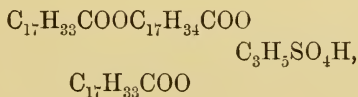
With respect to the product from olive oil, it is considered that at temperatures of from 0° to 5°, the initial action of sulphuric acid on this oil is to form direct addition compounds, namely, dioleinhydroxystearin-monosulphuric and monolein-dihydroxystearin-disulphuric esters.



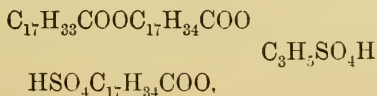
and—



These, by further action of the acid, are respectively resolved into—



and—



The sodium salts of the latter compounds together with their derivatives, and products of decomposition—namely, oleic, hydroxystearic, oleostearic, and possibly oleohydroxyoleic acids—constitute the oil-magma which is produced by the prolonged action of sulphuric acid on olive oil, after it has been freed from uncombined sulphuric acid by washing successively with sodium sulphate and sodium chloride solutions, the glycerine sulphuric esters decomposing the alkaline salts, and thus becoming neutralised. When boiled with dilute hydrochloric or sulphuric acid, the sulphuric acid is completely eliminated from this magma, and a mixture of oleic, oleostearic, hydroxystearic, and, perhaps, oleohydroxyoleic acids is produced.

#### OXY-TURKEY-RED OILS.

Messrs. Schmitz & Toenges, of Heerdt, near Dusseldorf, in Rhenish Prussia, make a class of Turkey-red oils which they call "oxyoleates." To prepare these, castor oil or olive oil is saponated in the ordinary manner with sulphuric acid; the oil is washed with water and brine, then heated in open vessels to from 105° C. to 120° C., by which means the sulphur is eliminated from the oil. The next proceeding is to neutralise with alkali. They are said to be more advantageous in use than the ordinary Turkey-red oils.

John Mercer, see p. 142, also made an oxydised sulphated oil, but by a somewhat different treatment.

#### SOLUBLE OIL.

Under this name there are sold to dyers and cotton finishers two preparations, both based on the use of castor oil. The name which is given to them arises from the fact, that while they are liquids of an oily appearance they are freely soluble in water. They are used in various processes of dyeing and

printing with alizarine dyes, direct dyes, etc., although usually the Turkey-red sulphated castor oils already noticed are preferred in the finishing of cotton cloths where a full and yet mellow feel is required. One of these preparations is sulphated castor oil, the other is practically a solution of castor-oil soap in water.

The sulphated soluble oils are made by the same process as that for the Turkey-red oils, which has been already described, only more water is added at the final stage to bring down the contents of castor oil to the standard of 25 per cent. Perhaps occasionally a little more soda is added to preserve the transparency of the liquor. Such a sulphated castor-oil soluble oil will contain—

73·96	per cent.	water.
·74	do.	alkali
23·74	do.	castor oil.
1·56	do.	salt and sodium sulphate.

These sulphated soluble oils may be distinguished from the saponified soluble oils (see below) by the fact that they contain much less alkali, as will be seen from the analyses that are given. Further, if the oil be evaporated to dryness and ignited, the residue, dissolved in water and acidified with hydrochloric acid, gives a white precipitate with barium chloride or barium sulphate.

#### ANALYSIS OF TURKEY-RED OIL.

Five to ten grammes of the oil are weighed out in an evaporating basin and placed in a drying-oven heated at <sup>104°C</sup> 220° F. At intervals the basin and its contents are weighed, and when the weight remains constant the loss gives the amount of water present.

*Alkali.*—Ten grammes of the oil are dissolved in water, a few cubic centimetres of an aqueous solution of methyl orange is added, and the solution titrated with standard sulphuric acid

until the colour turns from yellow to red. The number of cubic centimetres of acid used multiplied by 0.023 gives the amount of sodium (Na) present, or if the factor 0.031 be used, the quantity of sodium oxide ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ) is got.

If ammonia has been used in making the oil, the quantity may be estimated by distilling the oil with caustic soda in a flask fitted with a delivery tube passing into a solution of sulphuric acid. 10 grms. of the oil are used; to this is added a little caustic soda solution, and the mixture heated on a flask gently, so as to avoid much frothing. The ammonia gas which is evolved is received in 50 c.c. of standard sulphuric acid. At the end of the operation a few drops of phenolphthalein solution are added, and the excess of acid titrated back with standard caustic soda. The difference between 50 and the cubic centimetres of alkali used multiplied by 0.017 gives the quantity of ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) present.

*Total Fat.*—The 10 grms. of oil used for determining the alkali may also be used for this test. A little more acid is added, the mixture is placed in a separating funnel, a quantity of ether (not petroleum ether) is added, and the whole mass well shaken. A strong solution of common salt is next poured into the funnel, and the whole allowed to stand for the ethereal-oil mixture to settle out. The under layer of water is run off, a fresh quantity of salt solution (best heated to  $100^\circ \text{F.}$ ) added, the whole shaken up, and again allowed to stand. The aqueous layer is run into a weighed beaker, the ether evaporated off on a water-bath, and the residual oil weighed. Carefully worked, this method gives good results.

Another method is as follows:—5 grms. of the sample are weighed into a beaker, water and sufficient dilute sulphuric acid to decompose the oil are added; 10 grms. of stearic acid are next put in. The whole mass is boiled until the fatty matter becomes clear, when it is allowed to cool. The cake of fat is removed from the beaker, the water is heated, and any particles

of fat caused to run together. The water is poured off, the beaker rinsed out with water, care being taken not to wash away the drops of fat, the cake of fat is put back into the beaker, and the whole dried on the air-bath. When dry, the beaker is weighed and its contents of oil and stearic acid ascertained; the weight of the latter deducted gives the amount of total fatty matter present in the original oil.

*Sodium Sulphate.*—The amount of sodium sulphate present in the oil can be determined by taking 10 grms., dissolving in water, adding hydrochloric acid, and filtering through a wet filter-paper. The oil will remain on the paper. Wash with water containing a little hydrochloric acid. The filtrate is then heated to the boil, barium chloride is added, which throws down any sodium sulphate present as barium sulphate, the precipitate is filtered off, washed with water, dried, then burnt over a Bunsen burner in a weighed porcelain crucible, allowed to cool in a desiccator, and then weighed. The weight of barium sulphate found multiplied by 0.609 gives the weight of sodium sulphate present.

*Sodium Chloride.*—This is not often present, but may occasionally occur if a solution of common salt has been used in washing the oil during its preparation and the wash waters have not been properly drained away. To determine its amount, 10 grms. of the oil are dissolved in water, dilute nitric acid added, and the oil which is separated out filtered off. The filtrate is boiled and a solution of silver nitrate added, which causes the formation of a precipitate of silver chloride if salt be present in the oil. This precipitate is filtered off, washed with water, dried, then burnt in a weighed crucible, allowed to cool in a desiccator, then weighed. The weight of the silver chloride formed multiplied by 0.407 gives the weight of sodium chloride present in the oil.

*Separation of the Fatty Matter.*—The fatty matter, the total amount of which has been obtained in the manner described

above, is present in the Turkey-red oil in three forms: first, neutral or unchanged oil; second, soluble sulphated fatty acids; and third, as free fatty acids,—the latter two being present in the oil, combined with the alkali. These three forms of the fatty matter may be determined as follows:—

*Neutral Oil.*—20 grms. of the oil are dissolved in water, 10 to 15 c.c. of ammonia are shaken up with the mixture, and the free oil extracted in a separating funnel with ether. The ethereal solution is evaporated and the residual oil weighed.

*Soluble Sulphated Fatty Acids.*—To determine these, 10 grms. of the sample are boiled with water and either hydrochloric acid or nitric acid for about an hour. The mixture is filtered through a wet filter-paper and the residual fat is washed with warm water, the washings being added to the filtrate.

From the filtrate the sulphuric acid present is precipitated out by the addition of barium chloride; the precipitate of barium sulphate is collected and weighed in the ordinary manner. From the weight which is thus got, the weight of barium sulphate, due to the presence of sodium sulphate (see above), is first deducted, and the remainder multiplied by 4.725 gives the weight of sulphated oil present. This method of analysis depends on the fact that the boiling with the acids liberates the sulphuric acid of the oil in the free condition.

The fatty acids are obtained by difference—that is, the sum of the neutral oil and the soluble sulphated acids, as obtained in the last two tests, is deducted from the total fatty matter as previously obtained.

It is thought that the value of Turkey-red oil for dyeing purposes depends upon the proportion of the soluble sulphated acids it contains, but as yet no attempt is made, commercially, to buy Turkey-red oil on the basis of the amount of such acids it contains; it is doubtful whether a maker could regulate the formation of these acids with a sufficient amount of



accuracy to guarantee any fixed amount, so much depends on the proportion of sulphuric acid used, its strength, temperature, conditions of mixture, all of which may vary from time to time.

The presence of glycerol in ordinary Turkey-red oil is certain, but it is not an essential feature of the oil, for oil of identical properties can be prepared from the mixed acids obtainable by saponifying castor oil with caustic soda and separating out the fatty acids by addition of sulphuric acid, or from the similar acids of olive oil obtained in the same way.

Turkey-red oil consists of sulpho-ricinoleic acid, which is stable at the ordinary temperature, together with mono- and di-ricinoleic acids, as shown by determination of the molecular weight by Raoult's method of solution of the substance in acetic acid; the sulphonated fatty acid is hydrated, and in that state it is stable, it loses its water completely at  $120^{\circ}$ , and becomes insoluble by splitting up into sulphuric acid and fatty acid. From a tinctorial point of view, Scheurer-Kestner has noticed that it is the sulphonated fatty acid which tends to produce yellow shades of Turkey red from alizarine, while the polymerised fatty acids are favourable to the blue shades.

A separation of the acids of Turkey-red oil may be effected by shaking with a mixture of water and ether, when the fatty acids are taken up by the ether and the sulphonated fatty acid is retained by the water, from which it may be separated by salting out with a solution of sodium sulphate. The proportions of the two kinds of acids vary even when produced under apparently identical conditions. The solubility of Turkey-red oil in water is due to the presence of sulphonated acid, which is therefore the important factor to its solubility. The fluorescence always exhibited by Turkey-red oil is due to the non-sulphonated acids, which have a molecular weight of 472 as against 402 given by the sulphonated fatty acids obtained in the same experiment. (The molecular weight of

the normal acid is 298.) Sulpho-ricinoleic acid, as precipitated from aqueous solution by sodium sulphate, forms a syrupy hydrate, and constitutes about 40 to 50 per cent. of the most soluble kind of Turkey-red oil.

#### FINISHERS' SOLUBLE OIL.

Besides the soluble oil prepared by sulphating castor oil as described in previous sections (see p. 152), there is used in the finishing of cotton prints and cloths a soluble oil, which is nothing more nor less than a solution of castor-oil soap. Castor oil differs from other oils inasmuch as its soap dissolves easily in water to a clear solution, which may contain as much as 25 per cent. of fatty matter and still be liquid. This is used in the finishing trade to impart a full, firm, and yet somewhat pliable feel to cotton cloths, and there are few, if any, substances better than a castor-oil soap for this purpose.

This soluble oil is made in the following manner:—250 lb. of good seconds castor oil are mixed with 30 gals. of water, in which has been dissolved 40 lb. of 98 per cent. caustic soda: this is boiled until the oil is completely saponified and a clear transparent soap paste is obtained. This is now mixed with cold water until the mass measures 100 gals., when the preparation will be finished and ready for use. Other oils cannot well be substituted for the castor oil, as they will not give clear solutions under the same conditions.

The use of caustic potash in place of caustic soda gives a more fluid preparation, but costs more. Castor oil, too, has an advantage over many other oils—cotton, rape, linseed, or fish oils—in that it gives pale, straw-coloured, soluble oils, while those named tend to produce dark-coloured oils. In order to cheapen the cost, some makers have added a pale rosin to the castor oil; such preparations are, however, not satisfactory in use, for rosin soaps tend rather to darken in colour by the finishing operations through which the cotton is passed.

The analysis of these soluble oils follows on the lines of soap analysis (see p. 56); they can be distinguished from the sulphonated soluble oils by three features, viz. the presence of free alkali, a larger proportion—2·0 per cent.—of combined alkali, and the absence of sulphuric acid. See the section (p. 153) on “Analysis of Turkey-Red Oil.” The following are analyses of several commercial soluble oils made by the author:—

	1.	2.	3.
Water . . . . .	73·80	72·36	79·54
Free alkali as caustic soda . . . . .	0·24	0·32	·31
Combined alkali as sodium . . . . .	1·70	1·84	1·76
Glycerine . . . . .	2·20	2·45	1·84
Oil . . . . .	22·06	23·03	16·55

#### FINISHERS' SOAP SOFTENINGS.

In some classes of cotton goods the stiffness imparted by the starch necessary to fasten in the filling is not required, for some goods must have an appearance of fulness and still remain soft and pliable to the handling. In all cases where excellence is aimed at, some tangible thing is taken possessing the required qualities in a high degree as a standard or pattern to imitate.

The bleacher tries in the goods mentioned to produce an effect as nearly approaching the soft and kindly feeling of a kid glove as possible.

There are many substances that possess the property of softening the stiffness of the starch mixtures, and many articles are sold under various names to produce this effect. Commonest among these softenings are those of what we will call the soap class.

The composition of these soap softenings varies very much. Some are nothing but a jellified tallow soap made by boiling a

good tallow curd soap with water; others may be better made and contain other ingredients beside the soap. There is a strong element of fashion in these products; some softening appear to have a vogue for a time, then they disappear from the market and others take their place, perhaps in turn to be displaced by another preparation.

The following formulæ give details of the preparation of some of these soap softening, but an intelligent maker can modify these to suit the particular kind of work his finishing customer wants to do:—

1. *Simple Soap Finish*.—Take 25 lb. good white tallow soap, cut into thin shavings, add  $7\frac{1}{2}$  gals. of water, and boil until the soap is dissolved, then allow to cool, and when nearly cold stir well until the soap sets.

2. Weigh out 12 lb. tallow and 8 lb. lard, mix with 2 gals. of water, heat until the fats melt, then add 3 lb. 98 per cent. caustic soda dissolved in 2 gals. of water, boil until the fats are saponified, then add sufficient water to make 10 gals. of soap paste, allow to cool, and then stir until thoroughly cold.

3. Take 30 lb. of coco-nut oil, melt over 3 gals. of water, and add  $5\frac{1}{2}$  lb. 98 per cent. caustic soda dissolved in 2 gals. of water, boil the mixture until the oil is saponified, add sufficient water to make 10 gals., and allow to cool, stirring well.

4. Take 30 lb. coco-nut oil and 5 lb. tallow, and saponify with  $6\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of caustic soda as above, add water to make 10 gals., and 5 lb. powdered French chalk.

Some makers also add such articles as glycerine, liquid glucose, dextrine, etc. The chief features to have regard to are:—First, colour, as these soap softening must not have any colour, so that they will not tint in any way white or printed cotton goods. Second, smell, as they should not impart any odour, or lead to the development of any odour in the finished goods. Third, they should not contain any free alkali, for that

might change the colours of any printed goods on which the softening is used.

For these reasons it is necessary to make them from good fats like tallow, lard, coco-nut, and palm-nut oils, that make white soaps, and care must be taken to make them neutral.

In order to make better grades, some makers add such bodies as spermaceti, paraffin wax, Japan wax, or ozokerite.

It may be pointed out here that these soap softenings cannot be used with any finishing preparations containing zinc, calcium or magnesium chlorides or sulphates, as these curd out the soap in the form of grainy masses of insoluble zinc, calcium, and magnesium soaps, the formation of which destroys the finishing effect of the soap-softening.

## TESTING AND ADULTERATION OF OILS.

It is not intended in this chapter to enter very fully into all the various tests that have been described and applied in the testing and analysis of oils, but simply to describe a few of the more simple and characteristic tests, so that oil users may be able to ascertain whether a sample of oil be pure, or whether it be a fit substance for the particular purpose for which it is to be used.

The practical analysis of oils is one surrounded by many difficulties, and to make a satisfactory analysis and to report on the purity of a suspected sample demands a large and varied experience among oils, an experience which it cannot be expected that an oil user should possess. It is therefore advisable to submit a suspected sample to a competent analyst, and it is desirable that such an analyst should have a special knowledge of oils. In fact, it would pay large users of oil to make special terms with such analyst to test every lot of oil they have delivered to them, to see that it is what it is repre-

sented to be and that it is fit for use. In sending a sample to an analyst to be tested, from six to eight ounces should be supplied, as satisfactory tests cannot be made with less.

In judging the purity or otherwise of a sample of oil the following tests made :—

- 1st. Specific gravity.
- 2nd. Alkali tests.
- 3rd. Sulphuric acid tests.
- 4th. Free acid test.
- 5th. Flash-point test.
- 6th. Iodine test.

The 5th test is applicable solely to mineral oils or to mixed oils only, for in a fatty oil this factor is a fixed quantity and cannot be altered by any means. The method of making these various tests will be described, and then a few special tests for certain of the oils will be noticed.



FIG. 8. —

1. There are three ways of determining the *specific gravity* of a sample oil—first, by a specific gravity bottle; second, by a hydrometer; third, by the Westphal specific gravity balance.

The bottle method is the most accurate. The specific gravity bottle is one made specially for the purpose. It consists (Fig. 8) of a small thin glass bottle, accurately stoppered, and the stopper has a small thin tube bored through it, so that it will always hold the same volume of liquid when filled.

The bottle is carefully filled with the oil to be tested, taking care to avoid the formation of air-bubbles, the stopper is carefully inserted, the outside wiped clean and dry, and the whole is weighed. The weight of water the bottle holds is also ascertained. Then the weight of the oil is divided by the weight of the water the bottle holds, and the result is the

specific gravity of the oil. Thus a sample of olive oil gave the following figures :—

Weight of bottle full of water	.		38·496	grms.
Do. do.	.	.	13·496	,,
			25·000	,,
Weight of bottle full of oil.	.		36·387	,,
Do. do.	.	.	13·496	,,
			22·891	,,

$$\frac{22\cdot891}{25} = 0\cdot91564 \text{ specific gravity of oil.}$$

Before filling the bottle with the oil, see that the temperature of the latter is 60° F., which is the standard temperature to which the specific gravities of all oils are referred.

Sprengel's tube, which is a U-shaped tube with capillary tubes turned at the ends, is a very convenient piece of apparatus for the determination of specific gravities where only small quantities are available, or it is desired to find the gravity at a higher temperature than 60° F. The apparatus is used in the following manner:—It is first weighed, then filled with water, and weighed again. The tube, after being used for the water, should be cleaned out by first filling with methylated spirit, then with ether, and dried. If the gravity is to be determined at some higher temperature, it suffices to suspend the tube in a flask or beaker or water at that temperature, and keep it there for a short time, then take it out, dry the outside of the tube, and weigh.



FIG. 9.

The hydrometer (Fig. 9) method of determining specific

gravity of oil is that most used by oil dealers and consumers, and it is carried out as follows :—The oil to be tested is placed in a cylindrical glass jar, and the hydrometer is immersed in the oil. The degree on the scale of the latter instrument, which is level with the surface of the oil, is the specific gravity.

Hydrometers are made provided with a variety of scales, but what the oil tester wants is two instruments, one with a scale ranging from 0·700 to 0·860, and the other with a scale from 0·860 to 1·000. The latter includes all the various grades of lubricating oils, and the former includes all the gravities of the lighter naphthas and burning oils. As a rule, the two mentioned will be found sufficient, but if greater accuracy is required, then more instruments must be used to take the same range of gravities.

The special form of hydrometer frequently sold under the name of “oleometer” is perfectly useless, and should never be used. Its divisions are arbitrary, and nobody seems to understand them. This method of determining the specific gravity is subject to many defects. A large quantity of oil is required to float the instrument properly—a quantity which is not always available. The accuracy of the instruments, as ordinarily sold, is not to be depended upon, inasmuch as the scale is not adjusted for each particular instrument, and it is impossible to make two alike in every respect, and to have one especially graduated to ensure accuracy is a costly proceeding ; and there are other minor defects.

The Westphal balance method is a more accurate one, and is just as easy to work as the hydrometer, while the results are perfectly reliable. The Westphal balance is simple and easy to understand, and gives the specific gravity directly. The principal part of the apparatus is a glass bulb which has a volume of 5 c.c. Consequently, when immersed in water, it requires the balance arm to which it is attached to be loaded



with a weight of 5 grms. to restore the equilibrium. In liquids of lighter gravity proportionately a smaller weight would be required, or in heavier liquids a heavier weight. Riders of 5, 0.5, 0.05, and 0.005 grms. are supplied, and with these the specific gravity is easily ascertained.

The position on the balance-arm of these weights gives the gravity at once, without any calculation being required. The balance is used as follows:—It is mounted in position, and by means of the regulating screw at the base of the balance, the two pointers are brought into line with one another. Then the glass jar is filled with oil, and the glass bulb immersed in the latter. The large rider is now placed on the beam at the nearest division to produce equilibrium; then the next rider, and so on, until the two pointers are again brought into line. Then the numbers of the divisions are read off in the order of the weights, and these give the specific gravity. Thus, supposing the largest weight was on the 9, the next on the 1, the next on the 8, and the smallest on the 3 divisions of the balance-arm, the specific gravity is 0.9183.

The glass plummet supplied with the instrument takes the form of a thermometer, the range of which is, however, only a few degrees on each side of 60° F. By substituting for this plummet one made of solid glass rod exactly 5 c.c. in volume, it is possible, with the Westphal balance, to obtain the specific gravity of oils at any temperature.

The balance does not give good results with very viscid liquids, like glycerine, thickened rape and cotton-seed oils; cylinder oils and suchlike should be tested with the bottle.

Temperature is an important element in testing the specific gravity of oils, and therefore the temperature of the oil at the time of testing must be noted. The standard temperature is 60° F. (15° C.), and, if possible, samples of oil should be brought to this temperature before testing. Temperature affects oils by decreasing the gravity as the temperature

increases, and *vice versa*. Although there are slight differences among the various oils as to the amount of variation brought about by temperature, yet these variations are slight, and, for the purposes of correction, may be neglected. The difference in the specific gravity of an oil for 1° F. is 0·00035, and for 1° C., 0·00063. Using these factors, correction for temperature may be made. Thus, suppose an oil has a specific gravity of 0·918 at 64° F., at 60° F. its gravity will be  $0·918 + (0·00035 \times 4) = 0·9194$ . In other words, multiply 0·00035 by the number of degrees above or below 60° F., and add to or subtract from the specific gravity found according as the temperature is above or below the standard temperature of 60° F.

Too much stress must not be placed on the specific gravity test. Like most other oil tests, its indications are often of a negative character. It will not tell what an oil is, but what it is not. Thus it will not say that a given sample of sperm oil is pure, but it will say when an oil is not pure. Thus a sample of oil, said to be sperm, may have the right specific gravity (0·880), but for all that it may not be pure, and other tests must be made to decide this point. On the other hand, suppose that this test shows it to have a specific gravity of 0·870, the oil may be immediately condemned as impure.

The determination of the specific gravity of solid fats, like tallow, palm oil, etc., is rather more troublesome than is that of liquid oils, and any method which may be adopted leaves room for doubt as to the accuracy of the result. A simple but only approximate method is to melt the fat at not too high a temperature. Then pour it into a specific gravity bottle, and allow it to cool down to 15° C. (60° F.), and then weigh. This plan is objectionable on account of the great contraction which some fats undergo on cooling down, which may result in the bottle not being quite full of fat, and so a low and erroneous result will be obtained. Another plan is to have a wide glass tube, fitted with a cover which can be pressed down tightly. The

glass is first weighed full of water, then cleaned with the melted fat, which is allowed to cool down. The cover is put on and screwed down tightly, and the glass weighed again.

Another plan, which is greatly used, is to take advantage of the fact that fats or oils will just float in mixtures of alcohol and water of the same specific gravity. The *modus operandi* is as follows:—The fat is just melted, and then allowed to drop into alcohol, whereby it is converted into spherical drops. Mixtures of alcohol and water of various gravities—0·945, 0·940, 0·935, etc.—are employed. The globules of fat are dropped into each of these alcohol solutions until one is found in which the fat floats; the specific gravity of that alcoholic solution corresponds with that of the fat.

*Table of Specific Gravities of Fatty Oils at 15° C. (60° F.)*

Almond oil . . . . .	0·919
Arachis (ground-nut oil) . . . . .	0·920
Castor oil . . . . .	0·964
Coco-nut oil . . . . .	0·925
Cotton-seed oil . . . . .	0·923
Linseed oil . . . . .	0·932
Olive oil . . . . .	0·915
Palm oil . . . . .	0·940
Rape oil . . . . .	0·914
Sesame oil . . . . .	0·923
Lard oil . . . . .	0·912
Tallow oil . . . . .	0·912
Neatsfoot oil . . . . .	0·914
Tallow . . . . .	0·940
Sperm oil . . . . .	0·883
Whale oil . . . . .	0·925

In the summaries of the constants given under each oil, gravities at other temperatures are given.

2. *Alkali Tests.*—As has already been explained, the alkalis, caustic soda and caustic potash, convert the fatty oils into soap, but they have no action on hydrocarbon oils, except to form an emulsion from which the oil gradually separates out on standing.

Alkalis can be used in the testing of oils in three ways—to ascertain whether an oil is a pure fat or a hydrocarbon oil, or a mixture of both, and, in the first case, by noting differences in the colour and appearance of the soap formed, to determine the character of the fat oil present.

The method of applying this test is as follows:—A solution of caustic soda or caustic potash (the latter has the strongest action on oils, and very often gives the best results) is prepared, having a specific gravity of 1.340 (68° Tw.). Two volumes of this solution are shaken up in a test-tube with four volumes of the oil. Fat oils will combine with the alkali and form an emulsion, from which very little oil will separate on standing, and the aqueous layer always has an emulsified appearance. Hydrocarbon oils only form a slight emulsion. The oil separates out on standing, leaving the aqueous layer quite clean, or with only a faint cloudy appearance. A mixed oil will vary in appearance according to the proportion of the two oils present: if hydrocarbon oils are in the largest proportion, they will form a layer on the top and the aqueous layer will be emulsified; if the fat oil is in the largest proportion, then it will often be difficult to detect the mineral oil, but a little experience with this test will soon enable users of it to detect small quantities of hydrocarbon oil. A method of detecting mineral oils in fat oils, which is more certain, and will show 2 or 3 per cent., is to dissolve a piece of caustic potash about the size of a pea in 5 c.c. of alcohol, then add a few drops of the oil to be tested and boil for two or three minutes, and add 3 or 4 c.c. of distilled water. If the solution remains clear, only a fatty oil is present. Mineral oil causes the solution to be

turbid, and even so small a quantity as 2 per cent. will show itself in this way.

The amount of mineral oil in mixed oils is best ascertained as follows:—25 grms. of the oil are mixed with 10–15 c.c. of the caustic alkali solution and 25 c.c. of water and 5 c.c. of alcohol; the mixture is boiled, with constant stirring, for about an hour; by that time the fat oil will be saponified. The mixture is then put into a separating funnel, and more warm water and 25 c.c. of petroleum ether added. The whole is shaken together for a few minutes, then allowed to stand, when it separates into two layers. The upper layer consists of the petroleum ether with the mineral oil; the lower is an aqueous layer containing the soap made from the fatty oil. This is run off, clean water added, the mixture shaken up and again allowed to stand, and the aqueous layer again run off.

This operation is repeated until the aqueous layer runs off clear. The ethereal layer is now run into a weighed glass, the ether evaporated off, and the residual oil weighed. The weight multiplied by four gives the percentage of mineral oil in the same.

Koettstorfer's saponification test is one of the most important tests that can be applied to oils, fat oils especially. This is carried out as follows:—Two standard solutions are required, one of caustic potash dissolved in alcohol and containing about 28 grms. pure KOH in 1 litre of alcohol, the other is a solution of sulphuric acid containing 24.5 grms.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  per litre. Both these are what are called by chemists "semi-normal solutions." An alcohol solution of phenol-phthalein is used as an indicator; this body is colourless, but alkalis make it of a deep red colour; acids destroy this colour. The solution should be rendered of a faint pink tint by adding a drop or two of caustic potash.

Two grammes of the oil or fat are accurately weighed in a flask, and 25 c.c. of the alcoholic solution of potash are measured and added. The flask has fitted to it a long glass tube which acts

as a condenser. The flask, with its condenser tube and contents, is heated in a water-bath, the flask being shaken at intervals till the oil is thoroughly saponified, which will take place in about thirty minutes. The flask is then removed, and the contents allowed to cool.

A small quantity of the phenol-phthalein solution is added, and the standard acid solution run in from a burette drop by drop until the red colour of the mixture disappears. Twenty-five c.c. of the potash solution are now boiled in the flask (which has been previously cleaned out) alone for half an hour, and then the contents are titrated with the standard acid as before. The difference between the two amounts of acid used shows the quantity of potash required to saponify the oil. This difference multiplied by 0.028 gives the weight of KOH in grammes; this, multiplied by 100 and divided by the weight of oil, gives the weight of KOH (potassium hydroxide) required to saponify 100 parts of oil.

Methylated spirit may be used for making the alcoholic solution of potash, providing it be purified by distillation over lime and caustic soda as follows:—

The spirit is first placed in a bottle with a small quantity of quicklime and a piece of caustic soda, and allowed to stand for twenty-four hours, being shaken up at intervals. The spirit is next transferred to a retort or flask, and a little fresh lime and soda added. It is then distilled on the water-bath till about 95 per cent. has come over; the remaining 5 per cent. is thrown away. This process frees the spirit from impurities which gradually act on the potash, cause it to become dark brown, and this coloration interferes somewhat with the operation of titrating with the acid. A slight brownness does not make much, if any, difference. It disappears along with the red colour due to the phenol-phthalein at the end of the titration.

The reason for boiling 25 c.c. of the potash alone is also due to the spirit or alcohol containing impurities which destroy the

potash on boiling, and would therefore cause the oil to appear to have a high saponification value; but this error is eliminated by the method of carrying out the test described above.

As a rule, oils that resemble olive oils require from 19 to 19·5 per cent. of potash, rape oils from 17 to 17·6 per cent., drying oils from 18·5 to 19 per cent., whale oils 18·75 per cent., solid fats like tallow 19·25 to 19·8 per cent., coco-nut oil 22 per cent., butter 24 per cent., and sperm oils 12·3 to 14 per cent. of potash for complete saponification.

Adulteration of fat oils with mineral oils would show itself by an abnormally low percentage of potash being required; and it would be possible to calculate the amount of adulteration from the figures which have been obtained by multiplying the percentage of KOH obtained by 100 and dividing by 19, when the approximate percentage of fat oil in the sample will be got.

3. *Sulphuric Acid Tests*.—There are two different tests which can be made by means of sulphuric acid on oils. One is a colour test, the other is a temperature test.

(1) *Colour Test*.—This is a most useful test for fat oils, but one where great experience and a close observant eye are required. This test must only be carried out in bright daylight, so that shades of colour can be clearly discerned. It quite fails when done by gaslight or a dull daylight.

The *modus operandi* can be varied somewhat, but it is essential in applying this test that it should always be made in the same manner, as the results are slightly different if the manner of making the test is varied. A good method is to place twenty drops of the oil in a clean white basin, and then add two drops of strong sulphuric acid. As the acid falls through the oil, streaks of colour show themselves, and a tint of characteristic colour gradually spreads through the oil. After a minute or two the oil and acid can be stirred together and the colour again noted. This test should first be made with samples of known purity, so as to gain some experience of

it, and when testing unknown samples comparative tests with pure oils should also be made. Vegetable oils give various colours, usually shades of yellow, brown, or green; fish oils turn of a violet or purple colour; animal oils turn red or reddish-brown. Hydrocarbon oils turn a blackish-brown, but this effect is usually very slight.

The experimenter had best construct his own table of shade of colour. It is very difficult to convey by words what is actually meant by a colour name.

(2) *Temperature Test*.—This is known as Maumene's test, and is a very useful test, and one that is easily made. Twenty c.c. of the oil are measured into a small beaker, and a thermometer placed in it and its temperature noted. Eight c.c. of strong sulphuric acid, sp. gr. 1·845, are then added, and the oil and acid thoroughly stirred together with the thermometer as long as the temperature is observed to rise. The highest point which is reached is noted, and, the initial temperature being subtracted, the difference will be the increase in the temperature caused by the action of the acid on the oil, and it will be found that the different oils show certain variations in the amount of increase they produce, as seen in the following table:—

Oils.	Increase in Temperature.	
	Degs. C.	Degs. F.
Olive oil . . . . .	44	79·2
Sperm oil . . . . .	37	66·6
Rape oil . . . . .	35	63·0
Rape oil (thickened) . . . . .	58	104·4
Cotton-seed oil . . . . .	65	117·0
Neatsfoot oil . . . . .	32	57·6
Tallow oil . . . . .	38	67·6
Castor oil . . . . .	56	97·2
Rosin oil . . . . .	25	45·0
Petroleum lubricating oil . . . . .	25	54·0
Scotch shale oil . . . . .	6	11·0
Linseed oil . . . . .	68	122·4



These figures have been obtained by the writer when working with this test. It will be noticed that there is a marked difference between mineral oils and fat oils, the former giving much lower figures than the latter; and between drying and non-drying oils, drying oils yielding much higher figures, the action is more energetic, and generally there is a quantity of sulphurous acid gas evolved (distinguished by its odour of burning sulphur); differences may also be noticed when carrying out this test on the colour and consistence of the resulting mass, which may be utilised as qualitative tests for the oils. The thickened rape and cotton oils are more heating than the normal oils. These figures must not be taken as a standard of comparison, but they are simply given to show the general tendency of this valuable test. It is found that different observers obtain slightly different figures, although their own figures are concordant enough. This is due to slight differences in the conditions of carrying out the test, which will naturally vary with each observer. Hence this test must be conducted in a comparative manner, samples of unknown purity with samples of known purity.

With this test it is possible to ascertain approximately the proportion of the constituents of a mixed oil when those constituents are known; thus, supposing an oil consists of a mixture of cotton-seed and olive oils, it will yield an increase of temperature between  $44^{\circ}$  and  $65^{\circ}$  C., according to the relative proportions of the two. This is worked out by a formula—

$$X = \frac{(C - B) \times 100}{A - B}$$

Where X = Percentage of oil A in sample.

„ A = Mean rise for pure sample of oil A.

„ B = „ „ „ „ B.

„ C = Observed rise in the mixed sample.

Thus, supposing in a mixture of olive oil and cotton-seed oil

the observed rise was 56° C., then, according to the above formula, we have—

$$\frac{(54 - 44) \times 100}{65 - 44} = \frac{12 \times 100}{21} = 57.1 \text{ per cent. of oil A.}$$

Then there are 57.1 per cent cotton-seed oil, and 42.9 per cent. olive oil in the mixed sample.

4. *Free Acid Test.*—It is important that lubricating oils should be free from acid, whether this be of fatty or mineral origin, as it has a destructive effect on the metal of machinery, and it is astonishing what a corroding effect a small quantity of free acid in oil has on metal, especially on brass or copper when the two bodies have been in contact for some time. If an oil containing 3 per cent. of free acid be left in contact with brass for twelve hours it will have acquired a green tint, showing that it has dissolved some of the metal.

Fat oils, such as olive, rape, castor, cotton, generally contain small quantities of free acid, rarely less than 1 per cent., but the writer has found as much as 22 per cent. of free fatty acid present in oils. This free acid may have been present originally in the oil owing to defective methods of extraction, or, if the sample be an old one, may have developed by keeping.

All fatty oils, on keeping for some time, slowly become rancid, some oils more rapidly than others. This rancidity is brought about by the combined action of the oxygen and moisture present in the air with which they are in contact, and results in the decomposition and splitting up of the oil into its two constituent parts, glycerine and fatty acid. Fatty acids have a strong corroding action on metal.

Mineral oils are usually free from acid. If any be present, it is most likely to be sulphuric acid, and indicates imperfect washing of the oil during the process of manufacture.

A simple test for the detection of acidity in oils is the following :—Make a solution of phenol-phthalein in methylated

spirit—as much of the former as will stand on a sixpence—in about 6 oz. of the spirit. Add to the solution a drop or two of caustic soda until the liquor has acquired a perceptible red tint. Then take a little of the oil to be tested, add a small quantity of the above test solution, and shake well. If there be any acid in the oil, the red colour of the test solution will be discharged. No other substance is capable of detecting traces of acid in oil. Litmus, which is much used by many persons, is of no use for this purpose.

The amount of free acid in oils may be readily determined, thus :—10 grms. of the oil are weighed into a clean glass beaker, and 10 c.c. of neutral methylated spirit or alcohol added with stirring, then 1 or 2 c.c. of the phenol-phthalein test solution are added. A standard decinormal solution of caustic potash or soda is then run in slowly from a burette, constantly stirring all the while until a permanent red colour is obtained. As each drop of alkali solution falls into the oil it produces a pink spot. As long as any acid is in the oil this disappears on stirring. As soon, however, as the acid is neutralised, the pink colour remains permanent. Each cubic centimetre of alkali solution used is equal to 0.0282 of free oleic acid. The result multiplied by ten gives the percentage of acid in the oil.

If it is necessary to distinguish mineral acids from fat acids in oil, a solution of methyl orange may be used. This is turned pink by mineral acids, such as sulphuric acid, but is not affected by fatty acids.

5. *Flash-Point Test.*—This is one of the most important tests to apply to mineral or mixed lubricating oils. It is most easily carried out in the following way :—

Procure a white porcelain basin of about 2 oz. capacity, or, what is better, a copper vessel, and support it by suitable means over a Bunsen burner, nearly fill it with the oil to be tested, and hang a thermometer in the oil. The bulb of the latter should be completely covered by the oil, while it should not be

allowed to touch the bottom or sides of the basin. Connect with another gas supply an ordinary mouth blowpipe, and adjust the supply of gas to this so that the flame at the jet is only about the size of a small pea. Then heat the oil, carefully adjusting the size of the Bunsen flame so that the heating of the oil is not carried on too rapidly; a rise of  $10^{\circ}$  F. per minute is the generally recognised amount of heating, and it is not advisable to exceed this amount. A slow rate gives much more accurate results than a quick rate of heating.

During the progress of this test three points can be observed: first, the vaporising point; second, the flash-point; third, the burning-point or fire test.

*The Vaporising-Point.*—This is the first point to be observed. It is the temperature at which a vapour begins to be perceived. This is also known as the “smoke-point.” As a rule, it is not considered of much importance, and what particular value it has is somewhat uncertain. Of course oils with a low vaporising temperature, say of less than  $150^{\circ}$  to  $160^{\circ}$  F., would be unpleasant to work with on machinery where that temperature is likely to be exceeded.

The method of carrying out and the rapidity of heating have a considerable influence on the temperature at which an oil will begin to give off vapour. If the basin is heated rapidly over a naked flame, the temperature of vaporising will be much less than when the basin is heated on a sand-bath. A difference of  $20^{\circ}$  or even  $30^{\circ}$  F. may often be obtained by these two different methods of heating the oil. Those dealers and consumers who attach particular importance to the smoke-point always immerse the basin of oil in a deep sand-bath, taking care that it is well surrounded with sand. It is only by this means that different observers can obtain concordant results on the smoke-point.

*The Flash-Point.*—If, while the oil is being heated, the small gas jet is applied at intervals, say, every two or three

degrees rise in the temperature, taking care not to let the flame touch the surface of the oil, soon a blue flame will be observed to shoot across the surface of the oil. The temperature at which this flame is first seen is the flash-point.

Whether a sand-bath or a naked flame is used for heating the oil makes but little difference in the flash-point, rarely more than what different observers would note with the same oil. The higher the flash-point the safer is the oil to use, because then there is no chance of it giving off an inflammable vapour at any temperature to which it may be subjected in actual use.

This point of inflammability is of particular importance to cotton mills, where such a large quantity of fluff is always about the machinery. If an oil with a low flash-point were used, and the temperature should by accident get above the flash-point and a light come in contact, it is just quite possible that the oil would catch fire, and this would be sure to spread through the fluff, and hence, probably, through the mill, so that it is of particular importance in a cotton mill to use an oil with a sufficiently high flash-point.  $350^{\circ}$  F. is quite a safe point, and there is no necessity to much exceed it. Some dealers pride themselves on the high points of their oils, but a high flash-point is not all that is wanted in an oil. There is the proper viscosity to be considered, and, generally speaking, high flash-points and high viscosities go together; thus where you want, as in spindle oils, a moderate viscosity only, you cannot have very high flash-points; and if the latter feature only is considered, then an oil may be used which, owing to its high viscosity, is not the most suitable for the purposes. For use in cotton and other textile mills, where the peculiar conditions and material introduce a special element of danger, the oils should not flash at a lower temperature than  $350^{\circ}$  F., while for all other mills and works  $330^{\circ}$  F. may be accepted as a safe point. For cylinder oils  $500^{\circ}$  F. is the lowest flashing-

point usually accepted as safe, but in the case of oils for lubricating cylinders there cannot be any question of safety, because they are used under such circumstances as to preclude any idea of their taking fire. The true test of the value of a cylinder oil is its having a good viscosity which it does not lose to any great extent on being heated.

There is, however, a connection between a high flash-point and a high viscosity in cylinder oils. The process of manufacture consists in eliminating all light portions, the presence of which would reduce the flash-point and the viscosity considerably. The flash-point is much easier to ascertain than the viscosity, and for this reason, not for any considerations of safety, attention is given to it.

*The Burning-Point.*—This is known in America as the “fire test.” If after the flash-point has been determined the heating of the oil be continued, it will be observed that the flashing becomes more frequent and the flame gets more luminous. Presently the flame, instead of going out, will continue to burn. The temperature at which this occurs is “the burning-point,” or “fire test.” This point is not regarded as of very much use in this country, nor, indeed, is it; but in America it is considered of quite as much importance as the flashing-point.

The following table gives the three points of the chief varieties of hydrocarbon oils:—

		Degrees Fahrenheit.		
		Vaporising Temperature.	Flash- Point.	Burning- Point.
Scotch shale oil,	865	178	318	382
Do. do.	875	184	330	406
Do. do.	885	203	353	420
Do. do.	890	230	376	448
American petroleum oil, pale,	885	...	...	...
Do. do.	903-907	210	392	458
Do. do.	915	220	442	488
Do. do.	920	234	428	484

		Degrees Fahrenheit.		
		Vaporising Temperature.	Flash- Point.	Burning- Point.
American petroleum oil, cylinder	. . .	266	462	...
Do.	do. . .	270	528	...
Russian petroleum oil, pale, 896	. . .	190	348	410
Do.	do. 908 . . .	210	384	470
Do.	do. 914 . . .	230	390	496
Do.	do. 910 (residuum) . . .	180	320	385
Rosin oil, 985 . . . . .	. . . . .	190	320	385

The method of ascertaining the flashing-point described above is known as "the open flash test." There is another mode of carrying out this test known as the "closed flash test." The oil is heated in a metal vessel fitted with a cover in which are two apertures — one for the thermometer, the other aperture is fitted with a sliding cover. The oil is heated in the usual way. When heated to within a few degrees of its flash-point, the sliding cover is drawn on one side and the test flame inserted. If no effect is produced, the flame is withdrawn, the sliding cover replaced, and the heating continued. These operations are repeated at intervals of every two or three degrees until, on the introduction of the test flame, a flash or slight explosion is observed. The temperature indicated by the thermometer is noted as the flash-point. The flash-point by the close test is always lower, from 12° to 20°, than by the open test.

The author does not regard the closed flash test as thus carried out with much favour. He finds that different observers get very different results, which are due to differences in the construction of the test apparatus, the quantity of air in proportion to the oil used in the apparatus, and one or two minor differences which affect the flash-point as determined by the closed test. With the open test these differences are not produced. It makes but little difference with what apparatus the test is carried out, whether with large or small quantities of oil, provided the rate of heat is not too rapid.

The best instrument for the determining of the flashing-point of lubricating oils by a close test is Gray's. This instrument consists of a brass cup of the same size as that used in the Government standard petroleum tests, viz. 2 in. in diameter by  $2\frac{2}{10}$  in. in depth. A line cut round the inside of the cup,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. from the bottom, indicates the height to which it is to be filled in testing oil. The cup is closed by a tightly fitting cover, through the centre of which a small shaft or spindle passes to the bottom of the cup, carrying two sets of stirrers, one of which is below the surface of the oil, the other in the vapour space above. On the top of the spindle, above the lid, a small bevelled wheel with a milled edge is fixed, which gears with a vertical bevelled wheel on the inner edge of a horizontal shaft carried on two standards fixed on the lid, and terminating at the outer end in a disc of non-conduction material in which is fixed a handle for rotating the shaft. There are four openings in the lid. Through one a thermometer is inserted to indicate the temperature of the oil. The remaining three provide means of producing the flash. One of these is immediately in front of the small tilting lamp which ignites the gases. The other two, one on each side, admit air to produce the explosive mixture. These parts are normally closed by the loose three-quarter disc flat cover, provided with openings which, when the cover is turned one quarter round, coincide with the ports in the fixed lid.

In using this instrument the cup is filled to the mark with the oil to be tested. The test lamp is lighted; the flame being adjusted to about  $\frac{1}{8}$  in. in size. Heat is applied below the oil cup by a gas or spirit flame, either direct or through the medium of a sand-bath, and the temperature of the oil raised at the rate of  $10^{\circ}$  to  $15^{\circ}$  F. per minute, the stirrers being turned at short intervals during the process of heating.

When nearing the point at which the oil is expected to



flash, it is advisable to reduce the rate of heating in order that observations may be more accurately made.

The test for flashing-point is made by drawing the horizontal shaft, which has about  $\frac{1}{3}$  in. end play, outwards, which puts it out of gear with the stirrers and in gear with the sliding cover, which, being partly turned, opens the ports and tilts the flame of the test lamp into the centre one. If gas is present in sufficient quantity, a slight flash with an explosion is produced; if not, the ports are automatically closed, the heating is continued, the stirrers being used, and the test for "flash" repeated at intervals till the flash is observed, the temperature at which this occurs being taken as the flashing-point of the oil.

*Valenta's Acetic Acid Test.*—If equal volumes of glacial acetic acid and a fat oil be mixed together and then heated, the two liquids will amalgamate together and a clear solution will be obtained. On allowing to stand, a cloud will in a short time make its appearance in the liquid. Valenta discovered that this cloud makes its appearance at different temperatures in different oils, the "turbidity temperature," as it is called, being the point to be ascertained. Valenta's work has been more or less confirmed by subsequent observers, but still there are differences in the recorded observations which serve to show that there are several modifying circumstances in the application and carrying out of the test which must be taken into account. The strength of the acid is important. The temperature at which the turbidity is obtained is distinctly higher with a weak than with a strong acid; a dry test-tube or glass is necessary to obtain satisfactory results. Rinsing with water must be avoided, as the small quantity of water left in the glass will affect the subsequent tests. Slight differences are also observable by variations in the manner in which the test is made.

The author has obtained the following results with this test,

using 5 c.c. of the acid and oil, very convenient quantities, in a wide test-tube, the thermometer being immersed in the oil during the whole of the operation :—

Oil.	Turbidity Temperature. Centigrade.	Oil.	Turbidity Temperature. Centigrade.
Colzar	99	Rape	90
Castor	Soluble at ordinary temperature.	Ground nut	72
Neatsfoot	85	Lard	76
Cotton-seed	63	Olive	76
Sperm	85	Whale	71
Oleic acid	Soluble at ordinary temperature.	Ox	48

For further details, see a paper in the *Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry* for January 1887.

6. *Hubl's Iodine Test.*—If an oil is mixed with a small quantity of an alcoholic solution of iodine, the latter gradually becomes decolorised. This has been found to be due to the fatty acid of the oil combining with the iodine and forming compounds with it. The fatty acids present in oils belong to three distinct series :—*One*, the stearic series, better known to chemists as the “acetic series.” This series does not combine with iodine, so that the larger the proportion of the glycerides of these acids there is in an oil, the smaller the quantity of iodine with which they combine. The *second* series of fatty acids is the oleic series, each of which is capable of combining with iodine in the proportion of two atoms of iodine to one molecule of fatty acid. The *third* series is sometimes called the “tetrolic” or “linolic series.” These absorb four atoms of iodine for each molecule of fatty acid, and as the acids of these series

are characteristic of drying oils, it follows that linseed and other drying oils absorb more iodine than any other class of fatty oils.

Based on these principles is founded Hubl's test, which has for its object the determination of the amount of iodine absorbed by an oil. It is carried out as follows:—Five solutions are prepared. *1st*, a solution of 25 grms. of iodine in 500 c.c. of alcohol; *2nd*, a solution of 30 grms. of mercuric chloride in 500 c.c. of alcohol; *3rd*, a solution of 10 grms. of iodide of potassium in 100 c.c. of water; *4th*, a solution of 24.8 grms. sodium thiosulphate (hyposulphite) in 1000 c.c. of water (each cubic centimetre of this is equivalent to 0.0127 gm. of iodine); *5th*, a solution of 2 grms. of starch in 100 c.c. of water.

Two grms. of the oil are weighed out and dissolved in 100 c.c. of chloroform, and from 10 to 20 c.c. of this solution are taken. For drying oils 10 c.c. are sufficient; for other oils 20 c.c. Twenty c.c. of the iodine solution and 20 c.c. of the mercury solution are added, and the mixture allowed to stand for one and a half to two hours. Equal quantities of the chloroform, iodine, and mercury solutions are also mixed together to make a blank test. At the end of the time, 20 c.c. of the iodide solution and 20 c.c. of the starch solution are added, and the mixture titrated with the sodium thiosulphate solution, until the blue colour is discharged. The difference in the quantity of the sodium thiosulphate solution used in the two experiments, the blank test and the one with the oil, represents the quantity of iodine absorbed by the oil. The quantity of iodine absorbed by 100 parts of oil is called "iodine equivalent."

Mills' bromine test depends on the same principle, only a solution of bromine is used instead of the iodine solution, the excess of bromine being measured colorimetrically. The following table gives the iodine and bromine equivalents of a number of the fatty oils:—

Oil.	Iodine Equivalent.	Bromine Equivalent.
Linseed oil . . . . .	158	76
Cotton oil . . . . .	106	50
Thickened cotton oil . . . . .	50·2	31·4
Rape oil . . . . .	100	69·4
Thickened rape oil . . . . .	45·6	28·5
Castor oil . . . . .	84·4	58·5
Olive oil . . . . .	82·8	54
Lard . . . . .	59	37·2
Tallow . . . . .	40	28
Coco-nut oil . . . . .	8·4	5·7
Palm oil . . . . .	51·5	34·7
Hypogæic acid . . . . .	100	63
Oleic acid . . . . .	89·8	56·5
Ricinoleic . . . . .	85	53·5
Linoleic acid . . . . .	201·5	126·9

Hydrocarbon oils are also capable of absorbing iodine and bromine, the quantity absorbed being dependent upon the proportion of oleines the oils contain. Paraffins have no affinity for iodine or bromine: hence American oils, containing as they do more paraffin than Scotch shale oils, absorb less than the latter as a general rule. The following table gives a few iodine and bromine equivalents of petroleum and shale products:—

Name of Oils.	Iodine Equivalent.	Bromine Equivalent.
Scotch shale oils, 886 . . . . .	23·5	14·7
Do. oil, 890 . . . . .	20·6	12·9
Do. do. 908 . . . . .	23·2	14·5
Do. do. 863 . . . . .	29·2	18·3
Do. do. 873 . . . . .	26·0	16·3
American petroleum oil, 905 . . . . .	9·7	6·1
Do. do. 916 . . . . .	7·8	4·9
Do. do. 911 . . . . .	8·1	5·1

*Hehner's Bromine Test.* — Mr. O. H. Hehner described (*Analyst*, 1895, p. 50) the following gravimetric method of determining the bromine absorption of oils:—A small, wide-mouthed flask is carefully weighed, and from 1 to 3 grms. of the fat introduced into it. These are dissolved in 10 c.c. of chloroform, and then pure bromine is added, drop by drop, until the bromine is decidedly in excess. Both the chloroform and the bromine must be previously tested in a blank experiment, to make sure that they leave no appreciable residue on heating. The flask and its contents are then heated on the water-bath till most of the bromine is driven off, a little more chloroform is added, and the mixture again heated, the chloroform vapour helping to drive out the excess of bromine. Then the flask and its contents are placed in an air-bath regulated for about 125° F., and kept there until repeated weighings show their weight to be constant: this takes several hours. Some acroleine and hydrobromic acids escape during the drying. The increase in weight is the amount of bromine absorbed. This process gives very satisfactory results. The writer has obtained the following figures from different oils:—

Menhaden fish oil . . . .	43·6	per cent.
Pale seal oil . . . . .	87·6	do.
Pale whale oil . . . . .	4·6	do.
Scotch cod oil . . . . .	59·9	do.
Japan fish oil . . . . .	123·3	do.
Arctic sperm oil . . . . .	59·9	do.
Straw seal oil . . . . .	137·2	do.
Olive oil . . . . .	51·3	do.
Lard . . . . .	40·6	do.
Butter . . . . .	21·6	do.
Castor oil . . . . .	43·7	do.
Linseed oil (raw) . . . . .	114·2	do.
Linseed oil (boiled) . . . . .	60·0	do.
Linseed oil (boiled) . . . . .	112·0	do.

*Wijs' Iodine Test.*—One of the most convenient methods of determining the iodine value of an oil is undoubtedly that devised by Wijs, who makes use of a solution of iodine monochloride in glacial acetic acid. There are required, besides this, chloroform to act as a solvent for the oil, a 10 per cent. solution of potassium iodide in water, a 5 per cent. solution of starch, and a standard decinormal solution of sodium thiosulphate, containing 24.8 grms. of the pure salt in 1 litre of water. The solution of iodine monochloride is easily prepared by dissolving 51.2 grms. of iodine in 1000 c.c. of glacial acetic acid, then passing a current of dry chlorine gas into the mixture until the colour changes from brown to yellow.

The method of carrying out the test is as follows:—1 to 2 grms. of the oil are weighed into a wide-mouth flask, 10 c.c. of chloroform are added to dissolve the oil, and then 25 c.c. of the iodine solution. The mixture is allowed to stand for ten minutes for the reaction to complete itself. There is next added 10 c.c. of the potassium iodide solution, of 5 c.c. of the starch solution, and the mixture is titrated with the thiosulphate solution until the blue colour formed by the combination of the starch with unabsorbed iodine disappears. A blank test—that is, one with all the agents except the oil—is made at the same time. The difference in the number of cubic centimetres of thiosulphate solution used between the blank test and the one with oil represents the quantity of iodine absorbed. This difference, multiplied by 0.0127, gives the amount of iodine taken up by the quantity of oil taken for the test.

The results obtained by this Wijs method are comparable with those got with the Hubl method, while there is a considerable saving of time and greater constancy of results.

*Elaidin Test.*—For testing the purity of olive oil, there is scarcely a better process than the elaidin test, or Poutet's test, which was first devised in 1819. The best method of carrying it out is that described by Archbutt (*Jour. Soc. Chem. Ind.*,

p. 306). The test solution is made by dissolving 18 grammes of mercury in 15.6 c.c. of strong nitric acid of 1.42 specific gravity. The solution is best effected in a glass tube kept cool by immersion in water. The test solution will have a green colour, and as it has this colour, it is in fit condition to use.

Archbutt used 96 grms. of oil to 8 grms. of the test solution, but 50 c.c. of oil to 2 c.c. of solution is a very convenient quantity to take. The oil and solution are mixed together and allowed to stand for some hours, being stirred up at intervals if required. The time taken to solidify the oil is noted, the consistence of the solid mass, and also its colour.

Archbutt gives the following particulars of results obtained by this test:—

Oil.	Time to Solidify.	Colour of Mass.	Consistence.
Olive. . . .	60 minutes . . .	Canary yellow	Hard and impenetrable.
Oleic acid . . .	50 minutes . . .	Lemon yellow	Penetrable.
Nut . . . .	60 to 90 minutes .	Lemon . . .	Soft.
Neatsfoot . . .	180 minutes . . .	Do. . . .	Penetrable.
Rape . . . .	More than 6 hours	Deep orange .	Apparently solid, miscible with water.
Bottlenose . . .	160 minutes . . .	Deep lemon .	Soft.
Southern sperm	No solid, but thick in 6 hours . . .	Orange . . .	Buttery.
Ground-nut . . .	...	Do. . . .	Soft.
Cotton . . . .	...	Do. . . .	Turbid, fluid.
Niger . . . .	...	Do. . . .	Thin fluid.
Cod-liver . . .	...	Blood red . .	Fluid.
Castor . . . .	...	Lemon . . .	Like oil.
Sesame . . . .	...	Orange . . .	Thick, but fluid.
Menhaden . . .	...	Dark red . .	Turbid.

*Molecular Weight of Fatty Acids.*—Occasionally it is desirable, for the purpose of distinguishing between various oils, to determine the molecular or combining weight of the fatty acids obtained from them. This is done as follows:—10 grms.

of the fatty acid are weighed out, dissolved in methylated spirit, a little alcoholic solution of phenol-phthalein added, and then titrated with normal caustic soda until a permanent pink coloration is obtained.

To calculate the combining weight, multiply the number of cubic centimetres of caustic soda used by 0.04, which gives the weight of caustic soda needed to combine with the 10 grammes of oil; then divide this number into the weight of oil taken, and multiply the result by 40, when the combining weight will be obtained.

*Melting-Point of Fats.*—The most convenient way of ascertaining the melting-point of fats is that known as the capillary tube method. This is carried out in the following manner:—A piece of thin glass tubing is drawn out at one end into a capillary tube. The fat or substance whose melting-point is required is heated in a small glass beaker until it is just melted, and the end of the capillary tube dipped into the melted fat; some will be taken up. The tube is withdrawn and placed on one side for some time to cool, to allow the fat to solidify. The capillary tube is next tied to the stem of a thermometer, in such a way that the bulb and capillary tube where the fat is are close together. A beaker of cold water is placed on a sand-bath, and heated by a Bunsen burner. The thermometer is suspended in the centre of the water. As long as the temperature remains below the melting-point of the fat, the latter will be opaque and stationary, but when the melting-point is reached, then the fat becomes transparent, and will rise in the tube. When this event is noticed, the temperature is read off on the thermometer, and this gives the melting-point of the fat.

*Reichert's Test.*—Some fats, notably coco-nut oil, palm-nut oil, butter, and whale oil, contain fatty acids which are soluble in water, and, when distilled along with water, volatilise and distil over, the distillate having an acid reaction. It has been



found possible to employ this process as a test in the examination of oils, and from having been originally devised by Reichert, is known by his name. Since its first introduction, other analysts have published sundry modifications in the manner of carrying it out.

Reichert's test is carried out in the following manner:—2·5 grms. of the oil or fat are thoroughly saponified by boiling with 25 c.c. of a normal, or nearly so, alcoholic solution of caustic potash, in the same manner as is adopted for the Koettstorfer. After the saponification is complete, boil until all the alcohol has been boiled off, then dilute with water, add sufficient dilute sulphuric acid to decompose the soap, add water, if necessary, to bring up the volume to 75 c.c.; then distil in a retort until 50 c.c. have come over, taking care to avoid bumping over the liquid. Should the distillate be cloudy, or show the presence of fat globules, filter it, washing the filter with warm water. Then titrate the clear distillate with decinormal caustic soda, using phenol-phthalein as an indicator, noting the number of cubic centimetres of the alkaline solution required.

The following are a few figures obtained with this test:—

Fat or Oil.	Number of Cubic Centimetres of $\frac{N}{10}$ KOH used.
Butter . . . . .	12·5 to 15·2
Coco-nut oil . . . . .	3·5
Palm-nut oil . . . . .	2·5
Palm oil . . . . .	0·8
Whale oil . . . . .	3·7
Sperm oil . . . . .	1·7
Cotton-seed oil . . . . .	0·3
Castor oil . . . . .	1·4
Thickened rape oil . . . . .	1·2
Thickened cotton-seed oil . . . . .	1·3



## INDEX.

- Absorption of oxygen by oils, 118.  
 Acetic acid, 5.  
 Acid-milled goods, washing of, 37.  
 Acid radicle, 2.  
 Acidity, 21.  
 Acrolein, 5.  
 Action of soap on water, 43.  
 Adulteration of oils, 161.  
 Adulteration of olive oil, 94.  
   — of tallow, 78.  
 Acetic acid test, Valenta's, 181.  
 Alizarine dyes, 37, 38, 138.  
   — red, 40.  
   — oil, 139, 144.  
 Alkalies in soap, 59-64.  
 Alkaline soaps, 42, 43.  
 Alkali test, 162, 168.  
 American cotton-seed oil soaps, 34.  
   — tallow, 76.  
 Analysis of soap, 56.  
   — of Turkey-red oil, 153.  
   — of wool oils, 132.  
 Animal and vegetable oils, 116.  
 Autoclave, 133.  
 Australian tallow, 76.  
  
 Basic dyes, 38.  
   — radicle, 2.  
 "Batching," 114, 127.  
 Beef tallow, 76, 77.  
 Benzopurpurine, 40.  
 Bleaching of palm oil, 87.  
 Blended wool oils, 115, 117, 135.  
 Boiled-off liquor, recovery of fat,  
   53, 54.  
 Boiled soaps, 7, etc.  
 Boilers, closed, 7.  
   — open, 8.  
 Boiling-off silk, 41.  
 Boiling on strength, 15.  
   — process, 8.  
  
 Bone grease, 75, 81.  
   — tallow, 33.  
 Bonny oil, 86.  
 Brass oil, 85, 86.  
 Bromine test, Hehner's, 185.  
   — Mill's, 183.  
 Brown grease, 51, 114, 115.  
 Burning-point, 178.  
 Butchers' fat, 74.  
  
 Calico printers' liquor, recovery of  
   fat from, 55.  
   — soap, 38.  
 Castile soap, 95.  
 Castor oil, 21, 104.  
   — constants of, 106.  
   — soap, 42.  
 Caustic lye, 15.  
   — potash, manufacture of, 27.  
   — soda, 22, 23.  
 Chevreul, 32.  
 Cholesterol, 35, 50.  
 Clarifying fats, 21.  
 Cleansing boil, 17.  
 Clear boiling, 15.  
 Climatic influence on oils and fats, 6.  
 Constituents of Turkey-red oil, 157.  
 "Closing up" the soap, 17.  
 Cloth oil, 134.  
   — or yarn-scouring soaps, 35.  
   — scouring liquors, 36.  
 Crutching, 24.  
 Coal-tar dyes, 53.  
 Coco-nut oil, 21, 22, 89, 130.  
   — composition of, 91.  
   — constants of, 92.  
   — extraction of, 90.  
   — soaps, 36.  
 Cold process, 7, 20, 23.  
 Colour oil, 137.  
   — test, 171.

- Congo red, 40.  
 Constants of castor oil, 106.  
 — of coco-nut oil, 92.  
 — of cotton-seed oil, 99.  
 — of lard, 81.  
 — of linseed oil, 103.  
 — of olive oil, 95.  
 — of palm oil, 87.  
 — of palm-nut oil, 89.  
 — of tallow, 79.  
 Coprah, 90.  
 Corn oil, 107.  
 Cotton fabrics, 1.  
 — finishing, 1.  
 — oil, 22.  
 Cotton-oil soaps, 36, 42.  
 Cotton-seed oil, 26, 30, 96.  
 — extraction of, 97.  
 — constants of, 99.  
 — soaps, 34.  
 Country fat, 75.  
 Curd soaps, 8, 9, 16.  
  
 Decorticating cotton seed, 96.  
 “*De gomme*,” 41.  
 Degumming silk, 41.  
 Delaines, 40.  
 Dibasic diricinoleic acid, 150.  
 Dihydroxystearo - sulphuric acid, 150.  
 Dioxystearic acid, 150.  
 Distillation of grease, 128.  
 Dr. Albert Leeds' scheme of soap analysis, 70.  
 Drying oils, 6.  
 Dyes, alizarine, 38.  
 — basic, 38.  
 — mordant, 38.  
 Dyers' soaps, 40.  
 — soap liquor, recovery of fat from, 55.  
  
 Elaidin test, 95, 186.  
 Essential oil, 6.  
 Experiments of Wright and Thompson, 44.  
  
 Fat in soap, 64-68.  
 Fat oil, 6.  
 Fats, clarifying, 21.  
 — melting-point of, 188.  
  
 Fats and oils, 4.  
 — solubility of, 5.  
 Fatty matters of wool, 50.  
 Fehling test for sugar, 69.  
 “Fibroin,” 41.  
 “Figging,” 26, 30.  
 Fillings, 40.  
 Finishers' soap softenings, 159.  
 — soluble oil, 158.  
 Fire test, 178.  
 Fish oils, 26.  
 Fitted soaps, 9, 17.  
 Flash-point, 176.  
 — of oils in wool mills, 126, 132.  
 — test, 162, 175.  
 Frames, 24.  
 Fraser's high-pressure soap boiler, 18.  
 Free acid test, 162, 174.  
 French and Italian olive-oil soap, 34.  
 Fobbing, 9, 11.  
 Fulling wollen cloths, 32.  
  
 Gallipoli oil, 139, 140.  
 “Ginning,” 96.  
 Gladding test, 71.  
 Glauber's salt, 37, 53.  
 Glycerides, 3, 4.  
 — formation of, 112.  
 Glycerine, 3, 4, 6-8, 110.  
 — composition of, 111.  
 — mixtures, specific gravity of, 110.  
 — recovery of, 14.  
 Glyceryl, 2.  
 Glycerol, 112, 157.  
 “Graining,” 13.  
 Grain soaps, 8, 9.  
 Gray's apparatus for determining the flash-point, 180.  
 Grease, Yorkshire, wool, or brown, 51.  
  
 Half-jack oil, 86.  
 Hardness of water, 46.  
 — prevention of, 48.  
 Hard soap, 2, 7, 8.  
 — white soap, 25.  
 — yellow soap, 25.  
 Hehner's bromine test, 185.

- Hemp-seed oil, 30.  
 High-pressure system, 18.  
 Hubl iodine value, 95.  
 Hubl's iodine test, 182.  
*Huiles tournante*, 94, 139, 140.  
 Hydrocarbon oils, 115, 137, 184.  
 Hydrolysis, 4.  
 Hydrometer, 162, 163.  
  
 Indigo, 37.  
 Iodine test, 162.  
 — (Hubl), 183.  
 — Wijs', 186.  
 Iso-cholesterol, 50.  
 Isoricinoleic acid, 151.  
 Italian and French olive-oil soap, 34.  
  
 John Mercer's sulphated oil, 139-143, 152.  
  
 Koettstorfer's saponification test, 95, 169.  
  
 Lagos palm oil, 85.  
 Lanolin, 50.  
 Lard, 30, 80.  
 — constants of, 81.  
 — oil, 83.  
 — oil soap, 42.  
 Leeds' scheme of soap analysis, 70.  
 Linolenic acid, 103.  
 Linolic acid, 103.  
 Linolin, 3.  
 Linseed oil, 26, 30, 100.  
 — characteristics of, 101.  
 — constants of, 103.  
 Liquors for scouring yarn or cloth, 36.  
 Lye, 7, 9.  
 — caustic, 15.  
 — potash, 27.  
 — soda, 9.  
 — spent, 7, 14.  
  
 Mackay's spontaneous combustion apparatus, 120.  
 Maize oil, 107.  
 Manufacture of soap, 2.  
 Marrow tallow, 75.  
 Marseilles soaps, 39, 95.  
 Maumene sulphuric acid test, 95.  
  
 Maumene's test, 172.  
 Melting-point of fats, 188.  
 Milling woollen cloths, 32.  
 Mineral oils, 6.  
 Monobasic diricinoleic acid, 150.  
 Mordant colours, 137.  
 — dyes, 38.  
 Mottled-grey soaps, 82.  
 Mottled soap for wool-scouring, 33.  
 Mutton tallow, 76, 77.  
  
 Neatsfoot oil, 75.  
 New Calabar palm oil, 85, 86.  
 Neutral soap, 33.  
 Non-congealable cotton oil, 98.  
 Non-drying oils, 5.  
 Nut oil, 27, 114, 116.  
 — soap, 42.  
  
 Oil, essential, 6.  
 Oils, adulteration of, 161.  
 — and fats, 4.  
 — drying, 6.  
 — non-drying, 5.  
 — mineral, 6.  
 — saponifiable, 3.  
 — testing of, 161.  
 Oleic acid, 42, 114, 116, 133-135.  
 Olein, 3.  
 Oleines or wool oils, 115, 127-133.  
 "Oleometer," 164.  
 Olive oil, 27, 30, 93, 114, 116, 137.  
 — adulteration of, 94.  
 — constants of, 95.  
 — extraction of, 93.  
 — soaps, 34, 36, 39, 41-43.  
 Omentum, 74.  
 "Opening" the soap, 17.  
 Ordway's spontaneous combustion apparatus, 122.  
 Oxygen, absorption of, by oils, 118.  
 Oxyoleates, 152.  
 Oxy-Turkey-red oils, 152.  
  
 Pale soap, 25.  
 Palm-nut oil, constants of, 89.  
 — or palm kernel oil, 88.  
 Palm oil, 21, 22.  
 — bleaching of, 87.  
 — constants of, 87.  
 — manufacture of, 84.

- Palm soaps, 36, 39, 41-43, 86.  
 Pans for boiling soap, 9-11.  
 Paraffin, 6.  
 Para red, 40.  
 Perspiration, wool, 35.  
 Petroleum, 6.  
 "Pitch," 129.  
 Potash, 25.  
 — lye, 27.  
 — soap, neutral, 33.  
 Poutet's test, 186.  
 Pressure, soap-making under, 18.  
 Purifying of soft soap, 31.  
  
 Radicle, acid, 2.  
 — basic, 2.  
 Rain-water, 45.  
 Rape oil, 108, 114, 137.  
 Recovery of fatty matter, 51.  
 — of fatty matters, 54, 55.  
 — of glycerine, 14.  
 — of salt, 14.  
 Red, alizarine, 40.  
 — Congo, 40.  
 — Para, 40.  
 — Turkey, 40.  
 Reichert's test, 188.  
 Ricinoleic acid, 105.  
 — sulphuric acid, 149.  
 Rivers Pollution Acts, 49.  
 "Roses," 12.  
 Rosin, 31.  
 Rotondi, 32.  
 Run soaps, 9.  
 Russian tallow, 76.  
  
 Salting out, 7, 12.  
 Salt-pond palm oil, 85, 86.  
 Salt, recovery of, 14.  
 Saponification, 3, 5, 9, 10.  
 Scouring raw wool, 32.  
 — wool yarns, 32.  
 Scraps of soap, 10.  
 Sebacic acid, 5.  
 "Seeding," 77, 83, 129.  
 "Sericin," 41, 53.  
 Settled soaps, 9.  
 Sierra Leone palm oil, 85.  
 Silk, 1.  
 — boiling off, 41.  
 — degumming, 41.  
  
 Silk-dyers' soaps, 40.  
 Silk soaps, 53.  
 Silk-washing, soaps for, 27.  
 Simple soap finish, 160.  
 "Stripping," 41.  
 Soap analysis, 56.  
 — finish, simple, 160.  
 — frame, 16.  
 — hard, 7, 8.  
 — liquors, waste, 48.  
 — manufacture of, 2.  
 — for calico printers, 38.  
 Soap-pans, 9, 10, 11.  
 Soap-water, joint action of, 43.  
 Soaps for silk, 40.  
 — for wool-milling, 36.  
 — for wool-scouring, 32, etc.  
 Soda lye, 9.  
 — stearate of, 26.  
 Sodium chloride in soap, 68.  
 Soft soap, 2.  
 — manufacture of, 25, etc.  
 — purifying of, 31.  
 — tests for, 29.  
 Soft soaps for wool-scouring, 34.  
 Solubility of oils and fats, 5.  
 Soluble oil, 152.  
 — finishers', 158.  
 Solvent properties of water, 45.  
 Soxhlett apparatus, 71.  
 Specific gravities of glycerine mix-  
 tures, 110.  
 Specific gravity bottle, 162, 163.  
 — of oils and fats, 5.  
 — test, 162-167.  
 Spent lye, 7, 14.  
 Spontaneous combustion in wool  
 mills, 117-127.  
 Sprengel's tube, 163.  
 Starch in soap, 70, 72.  
 Stearate of soda, 26.  
 Stearic acid, 4.  
 Stearin, 3.  
 Strength, boiling on, 15.  
 Sugar in soap, 69.  
 Suint wool, 35.  
 Sulphated castor oil, 139, 140, 143.  
 — olive oil, 139, 140, 143.  
 — soluble oils, 153.  
 "Sulpho-oleic acid," 37.  
 Sulphuric acid test, 162.

- "Sulphur" olive oil, 94.  
"Sweet water," 110.
- Tallow, 21, 22, 30, 74.  
— adulteration of, 78.  
— American, 76.  
— Australian, 76.  
— beef and mutton, 76.  
— bone, 33.  
— constants of, 79.  
— oil, 78, 83.  
— Russian, 76.  
— soaps, 39, 42.
- Tannic acid, removal of, 37.
- Temperature of oils, 165.  
— test, 172.
- Testing of oils, 161.
- Tests for soap-boiling, 12.  
— for soft soap, 29.
- Textile oils, 113.  
— soaps, uses of, 1.
- Town fat, 75.
- Train oil, 107.
- Tripe tallow, 75.
- Turkey-red, 40.
- Turkey-red oil, analysis of, 153-158.  
— constituents of, 157.
- Turkey-red oils, 37, 138, 140-149.
- Uses of textile soaps, 1.
- Valenta's acetic acid test, 184.
- Vaporising-point, 176.
- Water, hardness of, 46.  
— and soap, joint action of, 43.  
— in soap, 58, 59.  
— solvent properties of, 45.
- Waste soap liquors, 48.
- Westphal specific gravity balance, 162, 164, 165.
- Whale oil, 26, 30, 107.
- White hard soap, 25.  
— soft soap, 25.
- Wijs' iodine test, 186.
- Wool, 1.  
— fat, 35.  
— fatty matters of, 50.  
— grease, 51.  
— oils, 113.  
— perspiration, suint or yolk, 35.  
— soaps, 32.
- Woollen cloths, fulling or milling, 32.  
— fabrics, 1.
- Wool-milling soaps, 36.
- Wool-washing, waste soap liquors from, 49.
- Wright & Thompson, experiments of, 44.
- Yarn or cloth-scouring soaps, 35.
- Yorkshire grease, 51, 114.  
— distillation of, 128.
- Yolk, wool, 35.

*Printed by*  
MORRISON AND GIBB LIMITED  
*Edinburgh*



# SOAPS

*A Practical Manual of the Manufacture  
of Domestic, Toilet, and other Soaps.*

BY

**GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.,**  
*Author of "Textile Soaps and Oils."*

385 Pages. 66 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 1898.

## CONTENTS

Chapter I. INTRODUCTORY.—Nature of Soap—Action of Soap.

Chapter II. SOAPMAKERS' ALKALIES.—Alkalies and Fats—Soda—Soda Crystals—Caustic Soda Lyes—Potassium—Potashes—Caustic Potash—Caustic Potash Lyes—Alkalimetry—Borax—Phosphate of Soda—Silicates of Soda and Potash—Common Salt—Lime.

Chapter III. SOAPS, FATS, AND OILS.—Oils and Fats—Glycerine—Soap—Fatty Acids—Animal Oils and Fats—Vegetable Oils—Refining and Bleaching Oils—Solvent Extraction Processes—Tallow—Lard—Bone Grease—Animal Soap Fats—Tallow Oil—Lard Oil—Palm Oil—Palm-Nut Oil—Cocoonut Oil—Olive Nut—Cotton-Seed Oil—Linseed Oil—Castor Oil—Corn Oil—Coca Butter—Rape Oil—Recovered Greases—Currier's Grease—Yorkshire Grease—Fuller's Grease—Oleic Acid—Rosin.

Chapter IV. PERFUMES.—Anise—Bergamot—Oil of Bitter Almonds—Oil of Caraway—Cassia—Cinnamon—Citronelle—Cloves—Coriander Lemon Grass—Geranium—Lavender—Neroli—Orange—Sassafras—Star Anise—Musk—Artificial Musk—Myrbane.

Chapter V. WATER AS A SOAP MATERIAL.

Chapter VI. SOAP MACHINERY.—Tanks—Fat Blowers—Soap Pans—Soap Whirls—Pressure Soap Boilers—Soap Frames—Slabbing Machines—Soap Barring—Soap-Stamping Machines—Toilet-Soap Machinery—Soap-Cutting Machines—Soap-Crushing Machines—Crutching Machines—Soap Pumps—Soap-Drying Machines.

Chapter VII. TECHNOLOGY OF SOAPMAKING.—Domestic Soaps—Saponification—Boiling Soap—Salting Out—Boiling on Strength—Fitted Soaps—Common Pale Soap—Castile Soaps—Pale Soap—Crown Soap—Primrose Soap—Brown Soap—Mottled Soaps—Curd Soaps—Paraffin Soaps—Filled Soaps—Silicated Soaps—Cold Process of Soapmaking—Cold-Process Soaps—Soap-Making under Pressure—Oleic Acid Soap—Hydrated Soaps—Saponification under Pressure—Toilet Soaps—Colouring Soaps—Transparent Soaps—Industrial Soaps—Special Soaps—Medicated Soaps—Soft Soap—Dry Soaps—Soap Powders.

Chapter VIII. GLYCERINE IN SOAP LYES.—Glycerine in Fats—Recovering Glycerine from Soap Lyes—Glycerine Plant.

Chapter IX. LAYING OUT A SOAP FACTORY.

Chapter X. SOAP ANALYSIS.—Constituents of Soap—Sampling Soap for Analysis—Water in Soap—Alkali in Soap—Fat in Soap—Mineral Matter in Soap—Rosin and other Fats in Soap.

APPENDICES.—A. Hydrometer Table; B. Hydrometer Table; C. Thermometric Table; D. Gravities of Oils; E. Gravities of Caustic Soda Lyes; F. Gravities of Caustic Potash Lyes; G. Fats and Alkalies; H. Gravity of Salt Solutions; I. Lime in Milk of Lime; K. Glycerine Solutions; L. Hadfield's Soap Frame—Index.

Price, **12s. 6d.**; India and British Colonies, **13s. 6d.**;  
Other Countries, **15s.** Strictly Net.

# The Industrial Uses of Water

BY

**H. DE LA COUX,**

*Chemical Engineer; Expert to the Council of the Prefecture of the Seine; Professor of Applied Chemistry, etc. etc.*

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH AND REVISED BY

**ARTHUR MORRIS.**

---

Royal 8vo. 364 Pages. 135 Illustrations. 1903.

---

## CONTENTS.

Chemical Action of Water in Nature and in Industrial Use—**Composition of Waters**—Origin of the Substances they Contain—Solubility of Certain Salts in Water considered from the Industrial Point of View—Effects on the Boiling of Water—**Effects of Water in the Industries. Difficulties with Water. Appropriate Remedies.** Feed Water for Boilers—Water in Dye-works, Print-works, and Bleach-works—Water in the Textile Industries and in Conditioning—Water in Soap-works—Water in Laundries and Washhouses—Water in Tanning—Water in Preparing Tannin and Dyewood Extracts—Water in Papermaking—Water in Photography—Water in Sugar Refining—Water in Making Ices and Beverages—Water in Cider-making—Water in Brewing—Water in Distilling—**Preliminary Treatment and Apparatus.** Substances used for Preliminary Chemical Purification—Commercial Specialities and their Employment—**Precipitation of Matters in Suspension in Water**—Apparatus for the Preliminary Chemical Purification of Water—**Industrial Filters**—Industrial Sterilisation of Water—**Residuary Waters and their Purification.** Soil Filtration—Purification by Chemical Processes—Recovery of Glycerine—**Analysis.** Qualitative Analysis of Substances in Solution in Water—Hydrotimetric Analysis—Quantification of Substances in Solution in Water—Index.

---

Price, **10s. 6d.**; India and British Colonies, **11s.**;  
Other Countries, **12s.** Strictly Net.

---

THROUGH ALL BOOKSELLERS, OR, POST FREE, OF  
**SCOTT, GREENWOOD & CO.,**

19 LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

*Catalogue of Technical Books post free on application.*

# LUBRICATING OILS, FATS, AND GREASES

*Their Origin, Preparation, Properties, Uses, and Analysis.*

## A HANDBOOK

For Oil Manufacturers, Refiners and Merchants, and the  
Oil and Fat Industry in General.

BY

**GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.,**

*Author of "Textile Soaps and Oils."*

Second Revised and Enlarged Edition.

65 Illustrations. 317 Pages. Demy 8vo. 1902.

### LIST OF CONTENTS.

- Chapter I. INTRODUCTORY.—Fatty Oils and Fats—Hydrocarbon Oils—Uses of Oils.  
Chapter II. HYDROCARBON OILS.—Simple Distillation—Destructive Distillation—Hydrocarbons—Paraffins—Olefins—Naphthenes.  
Chapter III. SCOTCH SHALE OILS.—Distillation of Scotch Oils—Shale Retorts—Oil Stills—Shale Products of Distilling Shales—Separating Products—Treating Crude Shale Oil—Refining Shale Oil—Shale Naphtha Burning Oils—Lubricating Oils—Wax.  
Chapter IV. PETROLEUM.—Occurrence—Geology—Origin—Composition—Extraction—Refining—Petroleum Stills—Petroleum Products—Cylinder Oils—Russian Petroleum—Deblooming Mineral Oils.  
Chapter V. VEGETABLE AND ANIMAL OILS.—Chemical Composition of Oils and Fats—Fatty Acids—Glycerine—Extraction of Animal and Vegetable Fats and Oils—Animal Oils—Vegetable Oils—Rendering—Pressing—Refining—Bleaching—Tallow—Tallow Oil—Lard Oil—Neatsfoot Oil—Palm Oil—Palm-Nut Oil—Cocoanut Oil—Castor Oil—Olive Oil—Rape and Colza Oils—Arachis Oil—Niger Seed Oil—Sperm Oil—Whale Oil—Seal Oil—Brown Oils—Lardine—Thickened Rape Oil.  
Chapter VI. TESTING AND ADULTERATION OF OILS.—Specific Gravity—Alkali Tests—Sulphuric Acid Tests—Free Acids in Oils—Viscosity Tests—Flash and Fire Tests—Evaporation Tests—Iodine and Bromide Tests—Elaidin Test—Melting-Point of Fat—Testing Machines.  
Chapter VII. LUBRICATING GREASES.—Rosin Oil—Anthracene Oil—Making Greases—Testing and Analysis of Greases.  
Chapter VIII. LUBRICATION.—Friction and Lubrication—Lubricant—Lubrication of Ordinary Machinery—Spontaneous Combustion of Oils—Stainless Oils—Lubrication of Engine Cylinders—Cylinder Oils.  
APPENDICES.—A. Table of Baumé's Hydrometer—B. Table of Thermometric Degrees—C. Table of Specific Gravities of Oils.  
INDEX.

Price, **10s. 6d.**; India and British Colonies, **11s.** ;  
Other Countries, **12s.** Strictly Net. Post Free.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE  
On the Bleaching of  
Linen and Cotton Yarn and  
Fabrics

BY

L. TAILFER,  
*Chemical and Mechanical Engineer.*

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY  
JOHN GEDDES M'INTOSH.

300 Pages. Demy 8vo. 20 Illustrations. 1901.

**CONTENTS.**

Chapter I. General Considerations on Bleaching. Chapter II. Steeping. Chapter III. Washing—Roller Washing Machines—Wash Wheel—Wash Mill—Squeezing. Chapter IV. Lye Boiling with Milk of Lime—Lye Boiling with Soda Lyes—Lye Boiling Kiers—Concentration of Lyes. Chapter V. Mather and Platt's Kier—Saturation of the Fabrics—Alkali used in Lye Boiling—Examples of Processes. Chapter VI. Action of Soap in Bleaching—Quality and Quantity of Soaps to Use—Soap Lyes—Soap Scouring Stocks. Chapter VII. Bleaching on the Bleaching Green or Lawn. Chapter VIII. Chemicking—Chlorides and their Decolorising Action—Chemicking Cisterns—Strengths, etc. Chapter IX. Properties of the Acids—Effects produced by Acids—Souring Cisterns. Chapter X. Drying by Steam—Drying by Hot Air—Drying by Air. Chapter XI. Damages to Fabrics in Bleaching—Yarn Mildew—Fermentation—Iron Rust Spots—Spots from Contact with Wood—Spots incurred on the Bleaching Green—Damages from the Machines. Chapter XII. Examples of Methods used in Bleaching—Linen—Cotton. Chapter XIII. The Valuation of Caustic and Carbonated Alkali—Object of Alkalimetry.—Titration of Carbonate of Soda—Comparative Table of Different Degrees of Alkalimetry—Five Problems relative to Carbonate of Soda—Caustic Soda—Mixtures of Carbonated and Caustic Alkali. Chapter XIV. Chlorometry—Titration—Wagner's Chlorometric Method—Preparation of Standard Solutions—Apparatus for Chlorine Valuation—Alkali in Excess. Chapter XV. Chlorine—Chloride of Lime—Hypochlorite of Soda—Brochoki's Chlorozone—Various Decolorising Hypochlorites—Comparison of Chloride of Lime and Hypochlorite of Soda. Chapter XVI. Water—Qualities of Water—Hardness—Dervaux's Purifier—Testing the Purified Water—Purification—Filters. Chapter XVII. Bleaching of Yarn—Weight of Yarn—Lye Boiling—Chemicking—Washing—Bleaching of Cotton Yarn. Chapter XVIII. The Installation of a Bleach Works—Water Supply—Steam Boilers—Steam Distribution Pipes—Engines—Kiers—Washing Machines—Stocks—Wash Wheels—Chemicking and Souring Cisterns—Various—Buildings. Chapter XIX. Addenda—Energy of Decolorising Chlorides and Bleaching by Electricity and Ozone—Energy of Decolorising Chlorides—Chlorides—Production of Chlorine and Hypochlorites by Electrolysis—Lunge's Process for Increasing the Intensity of the Bleaching Power of Chloride of Lime—Tailfer's Process for Removing the Excess of Lime or Soda from Decolorising Chlorides—Bleaching by Ozone—Index.

Price, **12s. 6d.**; India and British Colonies, **13s. 6d.**  
Other Countries, **15s.** Strictly Net. Post Free.

# Catalogue

OF

# Special Technical Books

FOR

MANUFACTURERS, TECHNICAL STUDENTS AND  
WORKERS, SCHOOLS, COLLEGES, ETC.  
BY EXPERT WRITERS

## INDEX TO SUBJECTS.

	PAGE		PAGE		PAGE
Agricultural Chemistry ...	10	Dye-stuffs ... ..	23	Paper-pulp Dyeing...	17
Air, Industrial Use of ...	12	Enamelling Metal ...	18	Petroleum ... ..	6
Alum and its Sulphates ...	9	Enamels ... ..	18	Pigments, Chemistry of ...	2
Ammonia ... ..	9	Engraving ... ..	31	Plumbers' Work ... ..	27
Aniline Colours ... ..	3	Essential Oils ... ..	7	Porcelain Painting...	17
Animal Fats ... ..	6	Evaporating Apparatus ...	26	Pottery Clays ... ..	16
Anti-corrosive Paints ...	4	External Plumbing...	27	Pottery Manufacture ...	14
Architecture, Terms in ...	30	Fats ... ..	5, 6	Power-loom Weaving ...	19
Architectural Pottery ...	15	Faults in Woollen Goods...	21	Preserved Foods ... ..	30
Artificial Perfumes...	7	Gas Firing ... ..	26	Printers' Ready Reckoner	31
Balsams ... ..	10	Glass-making Recipes ...	16	Printing Inks ... ..	3
Bibliography ... ..	32	Glass Painting ... ..	17	Recipes for Oilmen, etc. .	3
Bleaching ... ..	23	Glue Making and Testing...	8	Resins... ..	10
Bone Products ... ..	8	Greases ... ..	5	Risks of Occupations ...	11
Bookbinding ... ..	31	Hat Manufacturing ... ..	20	Rivetting China, etc. ...	16
Brick-making ... ..	15, 16	History of Staffs Potteries	16	Sanitary Plumbing ... ..	27
Burnishing Brass ... ..	28	Hops ... ..	28	Scheele's Essays ... ..	9
Carpet Yarn Printing ... ..	21	Hot-water Supply ... ..	28	Sealing Waxes ... ..	11
Ceramic Books ... ..	14, 15	How to make a Woollen Mill		Silk Dyeing ... ..	22
Charcoal ... ..	8	Pay ... ..	21	Silk Throwing ... ..	18
Chemical Essays ... ..	9	India-rubber ... ..	13	Smoke Prevention ... ..	26
Chemistry of Pottery ... ..	16	Industrial Alcohol ... ..	10	Soaps ... ..	7
Chemistry of Dye-stuffs ...	23	Inks ... ..	3, 11	Spinning ... ..	21
Clay Analysis ... ..	16	Iron-corrosion ... ..	4	Staining Marble, and Bone	31
Coal-dust Firing ... ..	26	Iron, Science of ... ..	26	Steam Drying ... ..	12
Colour Matching ... ..	22	Japanning ... ..	28	Sugar Refining ... ..	32
Colliery Recovery Work ...	25	Lace-Making ... ..	20	Steel Hardening ... ..	26
Colour-mixing for Dyers ...	22	Lacquering ... ..	28	Sweetmeats ... ..	30
Colour Theory ... ..	22	Lake Pigments ... ..	2	Terra-cotta ... ..	15
Combing Machines... ..	24	Lead and its Compounds ...	11	Testing Paint Materials ...	4
Compounding Oils ... ..	6	Leather Industry ... ..	13	Testing Yarns ... ..	20
Condensing Apparatus ...	26	Leather-working Materials	14	Textile Fabrics ... ..	20
Cosmetics ... ..	8	Lithography ... ..	31	Textile Materials ... ..	19, 20
Cotton Dyeing ... ..	23	Lubricants ... ..	5, 6	Timber ... ..	29
Cotton Spinning ... ..	24	Manures ... ..	8, 10	Varnishes ... ..	5
Damask Weaving ... ..	20	Mineral Pigments ... ..	3	Vegetable Fats ... ..	7
Dampness in Buildings ...	30	Mine Ventilation ... ..	25	Waste Utilisation ... ..	10
Decorators' Books ... ..	28	Mine Haulage ... ..	25	Water, Industrial Use ...	12
Decorative Textiles ... ..	20	Oil and Colour Recipes ...	3	Waterproofing Fabrics ...	21
Dental Metallurgy ... ..	25	Oil Boiling ... ..	5	Weaving Calculations ...	21
Dictionary of Paint Materials	2	Oil Merchants' Manual ...	7	Wood Waste Utilisation ...	29
Drying Oils ... ..	5	Oils ... ..	5	Wood Dyeing ... ..	31
Drying with Air ... ..	12	Ozone, Industrial Use of ..	12	Wool Dyeing ... ..	22, 23
Dyeing Marble ... ..	31	Paint Manufacture... ..	2	Writing Inks ... ..	11
Dyeing Woollen Fabrics ...	23	Paint Materials ... ..	3	X-Ray Work ... ..	13
Dyers' Materials ... ..	22	Paint-material Testing ...	4	Yarn Testing ... ..	20

PUBLISHED BY

**SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON,**  
8 BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL,  
LONDON, E.C.

Telegraphic Address, "Printeries, London".

# Paints, Colours and Printing Inks.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF PIGMENTS.** By ERNEST J. PARRY, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S., and J. H. COSTE, F.I.C., F.C.S. Demy 8vo. Five Illustrations. 285 pp. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

**Introductory.** Light—White Light—The Spectrum—The Invisible Spectrum—Normal Spectrum—Simple Nature of Pure Spectral Colour—The Recomposition of White Light—Primary and Complementary Colours—Coloured Bodies—Absorption Spectra—**The Application of Pigments.** Uses of Pigments: Artistic, Decorative, Protective—Methods of Application of Pigments: Pastels and Crayons, Water Colour, Tempera Painting, Fresco, Encaustic Painting, Oil-colour Painting, Ceramic Art, Enamel, Stained and Painted Glass, Mosaic—**Inorganic Pigments.** White Lead—Zinc White—Enamel White—Whitening—Red Lead—Litharge—Vermilion—Royal Scarlet—The Chromium Greens—Chromates of Lead, Zinc, Silver and Mercury—Brunswick Green—The Ochres—Indian Red—Venetian Red—Siennas and Umbers—Light Red—Cappagh Brown—Red Oxides—Mars Colours—Terre Verte—Prussian Brown—Cobalt Colours—Cœruleum—Smalt—Copper Pigments—Malachite—Bremen Green—Scheele's Green—Emerald Green—Verdigris—Brunswick Green—Non-arsenical Greens—Copper Blues—Ultramarine—Carbon Pigments—Ivory Black—Lamp Black—Bistre—Naples Yellow—Arsenic Sulphides: Orpiment, Realgar—Cadmium Yellow—Vandyck Brown—**Organic Pigments.** Prussian Blue—Natural Lakes—Cochineal—Carmine—Crimson—Lac Dye—Scarlet—Madder—Alizarin—Campeachy—Quercitron—Rhamnus—Brazil Wood—Alkanet—Santal Wood—Archil—Coal-tar Lakes—Red Lakes—Alizarin Compounds—Orange and Yellow Lakes—Green and Blue Lakes—Indigo—Dragon's Blood—Gamboge—Sepia—Indian Yellow, Puree—Bitumen, Asphaltum, Mummy—**Index.**

**THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINT.** A Practical Handbook for Paint Manufacturers, Merchants and Painters. By J. CRUICKSHANK SMITH, B.Sc. Demy 8vo. 200 pp. Sixty Illustrations and One Large Diagram. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

Preparation of Raw Material—Storing of Raw Material—Testing and Valuation of Raw Material—Paint Plant and Machinery—The Grinding of White Lead—Grinding of White Zinc—Grinding of other White Pigments—Grinding of Oxide Paints—Grinding of Staining Colours—Grinding of Black Paints—Grinding of Chemical Colours—Yellows—Grinding of Chemical Colours—Blues—Grinding Greens—Grinding Reds—Grinding Lakes—Grinding Colours in Water—Grinding Colours in Turpentine—The Uses of Paint—Testing and Matching Paints—Economic Considerations—**Index.**

**DICTIONARY OF CHEMICALS AND RAW PRODUCTS USED IN THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINTS, COLOURS, VARNISHES AND ALLIED PREPARATIONS.** By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Demy 8vo. 380 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home; 8s. 6d. abroad.)

**THE MANUFACTURE OF LAKE PIGMENTS FROM ARTIFICIAL COLOURS.** By FRANCIS H. JENNISON, F.I.C., F.C.S. Sixteen Coloured Plates, showing Specimens of Eighty-nine Colours, specially prepared from the Recipes given in the Book. 136 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

The Groups of the Artificial Colouring Matters—The Nature and Manipulation of Artificial Colours—Lake-forming Bodies for Acid Colours—Lake-forming Bodies' Basic Colours—Lake Bases—The Principles of Lake Formation—Red Lakes—Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Violet and Black Lakes—The Production of Insoluble Azo Colours in the Form of Pigments—The General Properties of Lakes Produced from Artificial Colours—Washing, Filtering and Finishing—Matching and Testing Lake Pigments—**Index**

## PAINTS, COLOURS, ETC.—*continued.*

**THE MANUFACTURE OF MINERAL AND LAKE PIGMENTS.** Containing Directions for the Manufacture of all Artificial, Artists and Painters' Colours, Enamel, Soot and Metallic Pigments. A Text-book for Manufacturers, Merchants, Artists and Painters. By Dr. JOSEF BERSCH. Translated by A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Forty-three Illustrations. 476 pp., demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Introduction—Physico-chemical Behaviour of Pigments—Raw Materials Employed in the Manufacture of Pigments—Assistant Materials—Metallic Compounds—The Manufacture of Mineral Pigments—The Manufacture of White Lead—Enamel White—Washing Apparatus—Zinc White—Yellow Mineral Pigments—Chrome Yellow—Lead Oxide Pigments—Other Yellow Pigments—Mosaic Gold—Red Mineral Pigments—The Manufacture of Vermilion—Antimony Vermilion—Ferric Oxide Pigments—Other Red Mineral Pigments—Purple of Cassius—Blue Mineral Pigments—Ultramarine—Manufacture of Ultramarine—Blue Copper Pigments—Blue Cobalt Pigments—Smalts—Green Mineral Pigments—Emerald Green—Verdigris—Chromium Oxide—Other Green Chromium Pigments—Green Cobalt Pigments—Green Manganese Pigments—Compounded Green Pigments—Violet Mineral Pigments—Brown Mineral Pigments—Brown Decomposition Products—Black Pigments—Manufacture of Soot Pigments—Manufacture of Lamp Black—The Manufacture of Soot Black without Chambers—Indian Ink—Enamel Colours—Metallic Pigments—Bronze Pigments—Vegetable Bronze Pigments.

PIGMENTS OF ORGANIC ORIGIN—Lakes—Yellow Lakes—Red Lakes—Manufacture of Carmine—The Colouring Matter of Lac—Safflower or Carthamine Red—Madder and its Colouring Matters—Madder Lakes—Manjit (Indian Madder)—Lichen Colouring Matters—Red Wood Lakes—The Colouring Matters of Sandal Wood and Other Dye Woods—Blue Lakes—Indigo Carmine—The Colouring Matter of Log Wood—Green Lakes—Brown Organic Pigments—Sap Colours—Water Colours—Crayons—Confectionery Colours—The Preparation of Pigments for Painting—The Examination of Pigments—Examination of Lakes—The Testing of Dye-Woods—The Design of a Colour Works—Commercial Names of Pigments—Appendix: Conversion of Metric to English Weights and Measures—Centigrade and Fahrenheit Thermometer Scales—Index.

**RECIPES FOR THE COLOUR, PAINT, VARNISH, OIL, SOAP AND DRY-SALTERY TRADES.** Compiled by AN ANALYTICAL CHEMIST. 350 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Pigments or Colours for Paints, Lithographic and Letterpress Printing Inks, etc.—Mixed Paints and Preparations for Paint-making, Painting, Lime-washing, Paperhanging, etc.—Varnishes for Coach-builders, Cabinetmakers, Wood-workers, Metal-workers, Photographers, etc.—Soaps for Toilet, Cleansing, Polishing, etc.—Perfumes—Lubricating Greases, Oils, etc.—Cements, Pastes, Glues and Other Adhesive Preparations—Writing, Marking, Endorsing and Other Inks—Sealing-wax and Office Requisites—Preparations for the Laundry, Kitchen, Stable and General Household Uses—Disinfectant Preparations—Miscellaneous Preparations—Index.

**OIL COLOURS AND PRINTERS' INKS.** By LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Translated from the German. 215 pp. Crown 8vo. 56 Illustrations. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Linseed Oil—Poppy Oil—Mechanical Purification of Linseed Oil—Chemical Purification of Linseed Oil—Bleaching Linseed Oil—Oxidizing Agents for Boiling Linseed Oil—Theory of Oil Boiling—Manufacture of Boiled Oil—Adulterations of Boiled Oil—Chinese Drying Oil and Other Specialities—Pigments for House and Artistic Painting and Inks—Pigment for Printers' Black Inks—Substitutes for Lampblack—Machinery for Colour Grinding and Rubbing—Machines for mixing Pigments with the Vehicle—Paint Mills—Manufacture of House Oil Paints—Ship Paints—Luminous Paint—Artists' Colours—Printers' Inks:—VEHICLES—Printers' Inks:—PIGMENTS and MANUFACTURE—Index.

(See also *Writing Inks*, p. 11.)

**THREE HUNDRED SHADES FOR DECORATORS AND HOW TO MIX THEM.**

(See page 28.)

## PAINTS, COLOURS, ETC.—*continued.*

**CASEIN.** By ROBERT SCHERER. Translated from the German by CHAS. SALTER. Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 160 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Casein: its Origin, Preparation and Properties. Various Methods of Preparing Casein. Composition and Properties of Casein. Casein Paints.**—'Marble-Lime' Colour for Outside Work—Casein Enamel Paint—Casein Façade Paint—Cold-Water Paint in Powder Form—Kistory's Recipe for Casein Paint and Varnish—Pure Casein Paints for Walls, etc.—Casein Paints for Woodwork and Iron—Casein-Silicate Paints—Milk Paints—Casein-Silicate Paint Recipes—Trojel's Boiled Oil Substitute—Calsomine Wash—Quick-Drying Casein Paint—Boiled Oil Substitute—Ring's Cold-Water Paint—Formolactin—Waterproof Paint for Playing Cards—Casein Colour Lake—Casein-Cement Paint. **The Technics of Casein Painting. Casein Adhesives and Putties.**—Casein Glue in Plates or Flakes—Jeromin's Casein Adhesive—Hall's Casein Glue—Waterproof Glue—Liquid Casein Glue—Casein and Borax Glue—Solid Casein Adhesive—Casein Solution—Glue Powder—Casein Putties—Washable Cement for Deal Boards—Wenk's Casein Cement—Casein and Lime Cement—"Pitch Barm"—Casein Stopping—Casein Cement for Stone. **The Preparation of Plastic Masses from Casein.**—Imitation Ivory—Anti-Radiation and Anti-Corrosive Composition—Dickmann's Covering for Floors and Walls—Imitation Linoleum—Imitation Leather—Imitation Bone—Plastic Mass of Keratin and Casein—Insulating Mass—Plastic Casein Masses—Horny Casein Mass—Plastic Mass from Celluloid—Casein Cellulose Composition—Fireproof Cellulose Substitute—Nitrocellulose and Casein Composition—Franquet's Celluloid Substitute—Galalith. **Uses of Casein in the Textile Industry, for Finishing Colour Printing, etc.**—Caseogum—"Glutin"—Casein Dressing for Linen and Cotton Fabrics—Printing Colour with Metallic Lustre—Process for Softening, Sizing and Loading—Fixing Casein and Other Albuminoids on the Fibre—Fixing Insoluble Colouring Matters—Waterproofing and Softening Dressing—Casein for Mercerising Crêpe—Fixing Zinc White on Cotton with Formaldehyde—Casein-Magnesia—Casein Medium for Calico Printing—Loading Silk. **Casein Foodstuffs.**—Casein Food—Synthetic Milk—Milk Food—Emulsifiable Casein—Casein Phosphate for Baking—Making Bread, Low in Carbohydrates, from Flour and Curd—Preparing Soluble Casein Compounds with Citrates—Casein Food. **Sundry Applications of Casein.**—Uses of Casein in the Paper Industry—Metachromotype Paper—Sizing Paper with Casein—Waterproofing Paper—Casein Solution for Coating Paper—Horn's Clear Solution of Casein—Water- and Fire-proof Asbestos Paper and Board—Paper Flasks, etc., for Oils and Fats—Washable Drawing and Writing Paper—Paper Wrapping for Food, Clothing, etc.—Paint Remover—Casein Photographic Plates—Wood-Cement Roofing Pulp—Cask Glaze of Casein and Formaldehyde—Artists' Canvas—Solidifying Mineral Oils—Uses of Casein in Photography—Casein Ointment—Clarifying Glue with Casein—Casein in Soap-making—Casein-Albumose Soap—Casein in Sheets, Blocks, etc.—Waterproof Casein.

**SIMPLE METHODS FOR TESTING PAINTERS' MATERIALS.** By A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Crown 8vo. 160 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Necessity for Testing—Standards—Arrangement—The Apparatus—The Reagents—Practical Tests—Dry Colours—Stiff Paints—Liquid and Enamel Paints—Oil Varnishes—Spirit Varnishes—Driers—Putty—Linseed Oil—Turpentine—Water Stains—The Chemical Examination—Dry Colours and Paints—White Pigments and Paints—Yellow Pigments and Paints—Blue Pigments and Paints—Green Pigments and Paints—Red Pigments and Paints—Brown Pigments and Paints—Black Pigments and Paints—Oil Varnishes—Linseed Oil—Turpentine.

**IRON - CORROSION, ANTI - FOULING AND ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.** Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Sixty-two Illustrations. 275 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Iron-rust and its Formation—Protection from Rusting by Paint—Grounding the Iron with Linseed Oil, etc.—Testing Paints—Use of Tar for Painting on Iron—Anti-corrosive Paints—Linseed Varnish—Chinese Wood Oil—Lead Pigments—Iron Pigments—Artificial Iron Oxides—Carbon—Preparation of Anti-corrosive Paints—Results of Examination of Several Anti-corrosive Paints—Paints for Ship's Bottoms—Anti-fouling Compositions—Various Anti-corrosive and Ship's Paints—Official Standard Specifications for Ironwork Paints—Index.

**THE TESTING AND VALUATION OF RAW MATERIALS USED IN PAINT AND COLOUR MANUFACTURE.** By M. W. JONES, F.C.S. A Book for the Laboratories of Colour Works. 88 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home and abroad.)



**Contents.**

Aluminium Compounds—China Clay—Iron Compounds—Potassium Compounds—Sodium Compounds—Ammonium Hydrate—Acids—Chromium Compounds—Tin Compounds—Copper Compounds—Lead Compounds—Zinc Compounds—Manganese Compounds—Arsenic Compounds—Antimony Compounds—Calcium Compounds—Barium Compounds—Cadmium Compounds—Mercury Compounds—Ultramarine—Cobalt and Carbon Compounds—Oils—Index.

## **STUDENTS' HANDBOOK OF PAINTS, COLOURS, OILS AND VARNISHES.** By JOHN FURNELL. Crown 8vo. 12

Illustrations. 96 pp. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home and abroad.)

**Contents.**

Plant—Chromes—Blues—Greens—Earth Colours—Blacks—Reds—Lakes—Whites—Painters' Oils—Turpentine—Oil Varnishes—Spirit Varnishes—Liquid Paints—Enamel Paints.

## **Varnishes and Drying Oils.**

### **OIL CRUSHING, REFINING AND BOILING, THE MANUFACTURE OF LINOLEUM, PRINTING AND LITHOGRAPHIC INKS, AND INDIA-RUBBER SUBSTITUTES.** By JOHN GEDDES McINTOSH. Being

Volume I. of the Second, greatly enlarged, English Edition, in three Volumes, of "The Manufacture of Varnishes and Kindred Industries," based on and including the work of Ach. Livache. Demy 8vo. 150 pp. 29 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Oil Crushing and Refining; Oil Boiling—Theoretical and Practical; Linoleum Manufacture; Printing Ink Manufacture; Rubber Substitutes; The Manufacture of Driers; The Detection of Adulteration in Linseed and other Drying Oils by Chemical, Physical and Organoleptic Methods.

### **DRYING OILS, BOILED OIL AND SOLID AND LIQUID DRIERS.** By L. E. ANDÉS. Expressly Written for this Series of Special Technical Books, and the Publishers hold the Copyright for English and Foreign Editions. Forty-two Illustrations. 342 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 3d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Properties of the Drying Oils; Cause of the Drying Property; Absorption of Oxygen; Behaviour towards Metallic Oxides, etc.—The Properties of and Methods for obtaining the Drying Oils—Production of the Drying Oils by Expression and Extraction; Refining and Bleaching; Oil Cakes and Meal; The Refining and Bleaching of the Drying Oils; The Bleaching of Linseed Oil—The Manufacture of Boiled Oil; The Preparation of Drying Oils for Use in the Grinding of Paints and Artists' Colours and in the Manufacture of Varnishes by Heating over a Fire or by Steam, by the Cold Process, by the Action of Air, and by Means of the Electric Current; The Driers used in Boiling Linseed Oil; The Manufacture of Boiled Oil and the Apparatus therefor; Livache's Process for Preparing a Good Drying Oil and its Practical Application—The Preparation of Varnishes for Letterpress, Lithographic and Copperplate Printing, for Oilcloth and Waterproof Fabrics; The Manufacture of Thickened Linseed Oil, Burnt Oil, Stand Oil by Fire Heat, Superheated Steam, and by a Current of Air—Behaviour of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oils towards Atmospheric Influences, Water, Acids and Alkalies—Boiled Oil Substitutes—The Manufacture of Solid and Liquid Driers from Linseed Oil and Rosin; Linolic Acid Compounds of the Driers—The Adulteration and Examination of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oil.

## **Oils, Fats, Greases, Petroleum.**

**LUBRICATING OILS, FATS AND GREASES:** Their Origin, Preparation, Properties, Uses and Analyses. A Handbook for Oil Manufacturers, Refiners and Merchants, and the Oil and Fat Industry in General. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Second Revised and Enlarged Edition. Sixty-five Illustrations. 317 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Introductory—Hydrocarbon Oils—Scotch Shale Oils—Petroleum—Vegetable and Animal Oils—Testing and Adulteration of Oils—Lubricating Greases—Lubrication—Appendices—Index.

**TECHNOLOGY OF PETROLEUM:** Oil Fields of the World—Their History, Geography and Geology—Annual Production and Development—Oil-well Drilling—Transport. By HENRY NEUBERGER and HENRY NOALHAT. Translated from the French by J. G. MCINTOSH. 550 pp. 153 Illustrations. 26 Plates. Super Royal 8vo. Price 21s. net. (Post free, 21s. 9d. home; 23s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Study of the Petroliferous Strata.**

**Excavations**—Hand Excavation or Hand Digging of Oil Wells.

**Methods of Boring.**

**Accidents**—Boring Accidents—Methods of preventing them—Methods of remedying them—Explosives and the use of the "Torpedo" Levigation—Storing and Transport of Petroleum—General Advice—Prospecting, Management and carrying on of Petroleum Boring Operations.

**General Data—Customary Formulæ—Memento.** Practical Part. General Data bearing on Petroleum—Glossary of Technical Terms used in the Petroleum Industry—Copious Index.

## THE PRACTICAL COMPOUNDING OF OILS, TALLOW AND GREASE FOR LUBRICATION, ETC.

By AN EXPERT OIL REFINER. 100 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Introductory Remarks** on the General Nomenclature of Oils, Tallow and Greases suitable for Lubrication—**Hydrocarbon Oils—Animal and Fish Oils—Compound Oils—Vegetable Oils—Lamp Oils—Engine Tallow, Solidified Oils and Petroleum Jelly—Machinery Greases: Loco and Anti-friction—Clarifying and Utilisation of Waste Fats, Oils, Tank Bottoms, Drainings of Barrels and Drums, Pickings Up, Dregs, etc.**—The Fixing and Cleaning of Oil Tanks, etc.—Appendix and General Information.

**ANIMAL FATS AND OILS:** Their Practical Production, Purification and Uses for a great Variety of Purposes. Their Properties, Falsification and Examination. Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Sixty-two Illustrations. 240 pp. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Introduction—Occurrence, Origin, Properties and Chemical Constitution of Animal Fats—Preparation of Animal Fats and Oils—Machinery—Tallow-melting Plant—Extraction Plant—Presses—Filtering Apparatus—Butter: Raw Material and Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Beef Lard or Remelted Butter, Testing—Candle-fish Oil—Mutton-Tallow—Hare Fat—Goose Fat—Neatsfoot Oil—Bone Fat: Bone Boiling, Steaming Bones, Extraction, Refining—Bone Oil—Artificial Butter: Oleomargarine, Margarine Manufacture in France, Grasso's Process, "Kaiser's Butter," Jahr & Münzberg's Method, Filbert's Process, Winter's Method—Human Fat—Horse Fat—Beef Marrow—Turtle Oil—Hog's Lard: Raw Material—Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Examination—Lard Oil—Fish Oils—Liver Oils—Artificial Train Oil—Wool Fat: Properties, Purified Wool Fat—Spermaceti: Examination of Fats and Oils in General.**

## THE MANUFACTURE OF LUBRICANTS, SHOE POLISHES AND LEATHER DRESSINGS.

By RICHARD BRUNNER. Translated from the Sixth German Edition by CHAS. SALTER. 10 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 170 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

**The Manufacture of Lubricants and Greases—Properties of the Bodies used as Lubricants—Raw Materials for Lubricants—Solid Lubricants—Tallow Lubricants—Palm Oil Greases—Lead Soap Lubricants—True Soap Greases—Caoutchouc Lubricants—Other Solid Lubricants—Liquid Lubricants—Lubricating Oils in General—Refining Oils for Lubricating Purposes—Cohesion Oils—Resin Oils—Lubricants of Fat and Resin Oil—Neatsfoot Oil—Bone Fat—Lubricants for Special Purposes—Mineral Lubricating Oils—Clockmakers' and Sewing Machine Oils—The Application of Lubricants to Machinery—Removing Thickened Grease and Oil—Cleaning Oil Rags and Cotton Waste—The Use of Lubricants—Shoe Polishes and Leather Softening Preparations—The Manufacture of Shoe Polishes and Preparations for Varnishing and Softening Leather—The Preparation of Bone Black—Blacking and Shoe Polishes—Leather Varnishes—Leather Softening Preparations—The Manufacture of Dégras.**

**THE OIL MERCHANTS' MANUAL AND OIL TRADE READY RECKONER.** Compiled by FRANK F. SHERRIFF. Second Edition Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. 214 pp. 1904. With Two Sheets of Tables. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Trade Terms and Customs—Tables to Ascertain Value of Oil sold per cwt. or ton—Specific Gravity Tables—Percentage Tare Tables—Petroleum Tables—Paraffine and Benzoline Calculations—Customary Drafts—Tables for Calculating Allowance for Dirt, Water, etc.—Capacity of Circular Tanks Tables, etc., etc.

**VEGETABLE FATS AND OILS: Their Practical Preparation, Purification and Employment for Various Purposes, their Properties, Adulteration and Examination.** Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Ninety-four Illustrations. 340 pp. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

General Properties—Estimation of the Amount of Oil in Seeds—The Preparation of Vegetable Fats and Oils—Apparatus for Grinding Oil Seeds and Fruits—Installation of Oil and Fat Works—Extraction Method of Obtaining Oils and Fats—Oil Extraction Installations—Press Moulds—Non-drying Vegetable Oils—Vegetable drying Oils—Solid Vegetable Fats—Fruits Yielding Oils and Fats—Wool-softening Oils—Soluble Oils—Treatment of the Oil after Leaving the Press—Improved Methods of Refining—Bleaching Fats and Oils—Practical Experiments on the Treatment of Oils with regard to Refining and Bleaching—Testing Oils and Fats.

## Essential Oils and Perfumes.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF ESSENTIAL OILS AND ARTIFICIAL PERFUMES.** By ERNEST J. PARRY, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S. 411 pp. 20 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

The General Properties of Essential Oils—Compounds occurring in Essential Oils—The Preparation of Essential Oils—The Analysis of Essential Oils—Systematic Study of the Essential Oils—Terpeneless Oils—The Chemistry of Artificial Perfumes—Appendix: Table of Constants—Index.

## Soaps.

**SOAPS.** A Practical Manual of the Manufacture of Domestic, Toilet and other Soaps. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. 390 pp. 66 Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Introductory—Soap-maker's Alkalies—Soap Fats and Oils—Perfumes—Water as a Soap Material—Soap Machinery—Technology of Soap-making—Glycerine in Soap Lyes—Laying out a Soap Factory—Soap Analysis—Appendices.

**TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS.** Handbook on the Preparation, Properties and Analysis of the Soaps and Oils used in Textile Manufacturing, Dyeing and Printing. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Crown 8vo. 195 pp. 1904. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Methods of Making Soaps—Hard Soap—Soft Soap. Special Textile Soaps—Wool Soaps—Calico Printers' Soaps—Dyers' Soaps. Relation of Soap to Water for Industrial Purposes—Treating Waste Soap Liquors—Boiled Off Liquor—Calico Printers and Dyers' Soap Liquors—Soap Analysis—Fat in Soap.

ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE OILS AND FATS—Tallow—Lard—Bone Grease—Tallow Oil. Vegetable Soap, Oils and Fats—Palm Oil—Coco-nut Oil—Olive Oil—Cottonseed Oil—Linseed Oil—Castor Oil—Corn Oil—Whale Oil or Train Oil—Repe Oil.

**GLYCERINE.**

TEXTILE OILS—Oleic Acid—Blended Wool Oils—Oils for Cotton Dyeing, Printing and Finishing—Turkey Red Oil—Alizarine Oil—Oleine—Oxy Turkey Red Oils—Soluble Oil—Analysis of Turkey Red Oil—Finisher's Soluble Oil—Finisher's Soap Softening—Testing and Adulteration of Oils—Index.

# Cosmetical Preparations.

**COSMETICS: MANUFACTURE, EMPLOYMENT AND TESTING OF ALL COSMETIC MATERIALS AND COSMETIC SPECIALITIES.** Translated from the German of Dr. THEODOR KOLLER. Crown 8vo. 262 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Purposes and Uses of, and Ingredients used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—Preparation of Perfumes by Pressure, Distillation, Maceration, Absorption or Enflourage, and Extraction Methods—Chemical and Animal Products used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—Oils and Fats used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—General Cosmetic Preparations—Mouth Washes and Tooth Pastes—Hair Dyes, Hair Restorers and Depilatories—Cosmetic Adjuncts and Specialities—Colouring Cosmetic Preparations—Antiseptic Washes and Soaps—Toilet and Hygienic Soaps—Secret Preparations for Skin, Complexion, Teeth, Mouth, etc.—Testing and Examining the Materials Employed in the Manufacture of Cosmetics—Index.

# Glue, Bone Products and Manures.

**GLUE AND GLUE TESTING.** By SAMUEL RIDEAL, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. Fourteen Engravings. 144 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)

## Contents.

**Constitution and Properties:** Definitions and Sources, Gelatine, Chondrin and Allied Bodies, Physical and Chemical Properties, Classification, Grades and Commercial Varieties—**Raw Materials and Manufacture:** Glue Stock, Lining, Extraction, Washing and Clarifying, Filter Presses, Water Supply, Use of Alkalies, Action of Bacteria and of Antiseptics, Various Processes, Cleansing, Forming, Drying, Crushing, etc., Secondary Products—**Uses of Glue:** Selection and Preparation for Use, Carpentry, Veneering, Paper-Making, Book-binding, Printing Rollers, Hectographs, Match Manufacture, Sandpaper, etc., Substitutes for other Materials, Artificial Leather and Caoutchouc—**Gelatine:** General Characters, Liquid Gelatine, Photographic Uses, Size, Tanno-, Chrome and Formo-Gelatine, Artificial Silk, Cements, Pneumatic Tyres, Culinary, Meat Extracts, Isinglass, Medicinal and other Uses, Bacteriology—**Glue Testing:** Review of Processes, Chemical Examination, Adulteration, Physical Tests, Valuation of Raw Materials—**Commercial Aspects.**

**BONE PRODUCTS AND MANURES:** An Account of the most recent Improvements in the Manufacture of Fat, Glue, Animal Charcoal, Size, Gelatine and Manures. By THOMAS LAMBERT, Technical and Consulting Chemist. Illustrated by Twenty-one Plans and Diagrams. 162 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

Chemical Composition of Bones—Arrangement of Factory—Properties of Glue—Glutin and Chondrin—Skin Glue—Liming of Skins—Washing—Boiling of Skins—Clarification of Glue Liquors—Glue-Boiling and Clarifying—House—Specification of a Glue—Size—Uses and Preparation and Composition of Size—Concentrated Size—Properties of Gelatine—Preparation of Skin Gelatine—Drying—Bone Gelatine—Selecting Bones—Crushing—Dissolving—Bleaching—Boiling—Properties of Glutin and Chondrin—Testing of Glues and Gelatines—The Uses of Glue, Gelatine and Size in Various Trades—Soluble and Liquid Glues—Steam and Waterproof Glues—**Manures**—Importation of Food Stuffs—Soils—Germination—Plant Life—**Natural Manures**—Water and Nitrogen in Farmyard Manure—Full Analysis of Farmyard Manure—Action on Crops—Water-Closet System—Sewage Manure—Green Manures—**Artificial Manures**—**Mineral Manures**—Nitrogenous Matters—Shoddy—Hoofs and Horns—Leather Waste—Dried Meat—Dried Blood—Superphosphates—Composition—Manufacture—Common Raw Bones—Degreased Bones—Crude Fat—Refined Fat—Degelatinised Bones—Animal Charcoal—Bone Superphosphates—Guanos—Dried Animal Products—Potash Compounds—Sulphate of Ammonia—Extraction *in Vacuo*—French and British Gelatines compared—Index.

# Chemicals, Waste Products and Agricultural Chemistry.

REISSUE OF **CHEMICAL ESSAYS OF C. W. SCHEELE.** First Published in English in 1786. Translated from the Academy of Sciences at Stockholm, with Additions. 300 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 6d. home; 5s. 9d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Memoir: C. W. Scheele and his work (written for this edition by J. G. McIntosh)—On Fluor Mineral and its Acid—On Fluor Mineral—Chemical Investigation of Fluor Acid, with a View to the Earth which it Yields, by Mr. Wiegler—Additional Information Concerning Fluor Minerals—On Manganese, Magnesium, or Magnesia Vitrariorum—On Arsenic and its Acid—Remarks upon Salts of Benzoin—On Silex, Clay and Alum—Analysis of the Calculus Vesical—Method of Preparing Mercurius Dulcis Via Humida—Cheaper and more Convenient Method of Preparing Pulvis Algarothi—Experiments upon Molybdæna—Experiments on Plumbago—Method of Preparing a New Green Colour—Of the Decomposition of Neutral Salts by Unslaked Lime and Iron—On the Quantity of Pure Air which is Daily Present in our Atmosphere—On Milk and its Acid—On the Acid of Saccharum Lactis—On the Constituent Parts of Lapis Ponderosus or Tungsten—Experiments and Observations on Ether—Index.

**THE MANUFACTURE OF ALUM AND THE SULPHATES AND OTHER SALTS OF ALUMINA AND IRON.** Their Uses and Applications as Mordants in Dyeing and Calico Printing, and their other Applications in the Arts, Manufactures, Sanitary Engineering, Agriculture and Horticulture. Translated from the French of LUCIEN GESCHWIND. 195 Illustrations. 400 pp. Royal 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Theoretical Study of Aluminium, Iron, and Compounds of these Metals—Aluminium and its Compounds—Iron and Iron Compounds.

Manufacture of Aluminium Sulphates and Sulphates of Iron—Manufacture of Aluminium Sulphate and the Alums—Manufacture of Sulphates of Iron.

Uses of the Sulphates of Aluminium and Iron—Uses of Aluminium Sulphate and Alums—Application to Wool and Silk—Preparing and using Aluminium Acetates—Employment of Aluminium Sulphate in Carbonising Wool—The Manufacture of Lake Pigments—Manufacture of Prussian Blue—Hide and Leather Industry—Paper Making—Hardening Plaster—Lime Washes—Preparation of Non-inflammable Wood, etc.—Purification of Waste Waters—Uses and Applications of Ferrous Sulphate and Ferric Sulphates—Dyeing—Manufacture of Pigments—Writing Inks—Purification of Lighting Gas—Agriculture—Cotton Dyeing—Disinfectant—Purifying Waste Liquors—Manufacture of Nordhausen Sulphuric Acid—Fertilising.

Chemical Characteristics of Iron and Aluminium—Analysis of Various Aluminous or Ferruginous Products—Aluminium—Analysing Aluminium Products—Alunite—Alumina—Sodium Aluminate—Aluminium Sulphate—Iron—Analytical Characteristics of Iron Salts—Analysis of Pyritic Lignite—Ferrous and Ferric Sulphates—Rouil Mordant—Index.

**AMMONIA AND ITS COMPOUNDS:** Their Manufacture and Uses. By CAMILLE VINCENT, Professor at the Central School of Arts and Manufactures, Paris. Translated from the French by M. J. SALTER. Royal 8vo. 114 pp. Thirty-two Illustrations. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

General Considerations: Various Sources of Ammoniacal Products; Human Urine as a Source of Ammonia—Extraction of Ammoniacal Products from Sewage—Extraction of Ammonia from Gas Liquor—Manufacture of Ammoniacal Compounds from Bones, Nitrogenous Waste, Beetroot Wash and Peat—Manufacture of Caustic Ammonia, and Ammonium Chloride, Phosphate and Carbonate—Recovery of Ammonia from the Ammonia-Soda Mother Liquors—Index.

**INDUSTRIAL ALCOHOL.** A Practical Manual on the Production and Use of Alcohol for Industrial Purposes and for Use as a Heating Agent, as an Illuminant and as a Source of Motive Power. By J. G. M'INTOSH, Lecturer on Manufacture and Applications of Industrial Alcohol at The Polytechnic, Regent Street, London. Demy 8vo. 1907. 250 pp. With 75 Illustrations and 25 Tables. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 9d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Alcohol and its Properties.**—Ethylic Alcohol—Absolute Alcohol—Adulterations—Properties of Alcohol—Fractional Distillation—Destructive Distillation—Products of Combustion—Alcoholometry—Proof Spirit—Analysis of Alcohol—Table showing Correspondence between the Specific Gravity and Per Cents. of Alcohol over and under Proof—Other Alcohol Tables. **Continuous Aseptic and Antiseptic Fermentation and Sterilisation in Industrial Alcohol Manufacture.** The Manufacture of Industrial Alcohol from Beets.—Beet Slicing Machines—Extraction of Beet Juice by Maceration, by Diffusion—Fermentation in Beet Distilleries—Plans of Modern Beet Distillery. **The Manufacture of Industrial Alcohol from Grain.**—Plan of Modern Grain Distillery. **The Manufacture of Industrial Alcohol from Potatoes.** The Manufacture of Industrial Alcohol from Surplus Stocks of Wine, Spoilt Wine, Wine Marcs, and from Fruit in General. The Manufacture of Alcohol from the Sugar Cane and Sugar Cane Molasses—Plans. **Plant, etc., for the Distillation and Rectification of Industrial Alcohol.**—The Coffey and other "Patent" Stills—Intermittent versus Continuous Rectification—Continuous Distillation—Rectification of Spent Wash. **The Manufacture and Uses of Various Alcohol Derivatives,** Ether, Haloid Ethers, Compound Ethers, Chloroform—Methyl and Amyl Alcohols and their Ethereal Salts, Acetone—Barbet's Ether, Methyl Alcohol and Acetone Rectifying Stills. **The Uses of Alcohol in Manufactures, etc.**—List of Industries in which Alcohol is used, with Key to Function of Alcohol in each Industry. **The Uses of Alcohol for Lighting, Heating, and Motive Power.**

**ANALYSIS OF RESINS AND BALSAMS.** Translated from the German of Dr. KARL DIETERICH. Demy 8vo. 340 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

**MANUAL OF AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY.** By HERBERT INGLE, F.I.C., Lecturer on Agricultural Chemistry, the Yorkshire College; Lecturer in the Victoria University. 388 pp. 11 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home ; 8s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Introduction—The Atmosphere—The Soil—The Reactions occurring in Soils—The Analysis of Soils—Manures, Natural—Manures (continued)—The Analysis of Manures—The Constituents of Plants—The Plant—Crops—The Animal—Foods and Feeding—Milk and Milk Products—The Analysis of Milk and Milk Products—Miscellaneous Products used in Agriculture—Appendix—Index.

**THE UTILISATION OF WASTE PRODUCTS.** A Treatise on the Rational Utilisation, Recovery and Treatment of Waste Products of all kinds. By Dr. THEODOR KOLLER. Translated from the Second Revised German Edition. Twenty-two Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 280 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

The Waste of Towns—**Ammonia and Sal-Ammoniac**—Rational Processes for Obtaining these Substances by Treating Residues and Waste—Residues in the Manufacture of Aniline Dyes—Amber Waste—Brewers' Waste—Blood and Slaughter-House Refuse—Manufactured Fuels—Waste Paper and Bookbinders' Waste—Iron Slags—Excrement—Colouring Matters from Waste—Dyers' Waste Waters—Fat from Waste—Fish Waste—Calamine Sludge—Tannery Waste—Gold and Silver Waste—India-rubber and Caoutchouc Waste—Residues in the Manufacture of Rosin Oil—Wood Waste—Horn Waste—Infusorial Earth—Iridium from Goldsmiths' Sweepings—Jute Waste—Cork Waste—Leather Waste—Glue Makers' Waste—Illuminating Gas from Waste and the By-Products of the Manufacture of Coal Gas—Meerschum—Molasses—Metal Waste—By-Products in the Manufacture of Mineral Waters—Fruit—The By-Products of Paper and Paper Pulp Works—By-Products in the Treatment of Coal Tar Oils—Fur Waste—The Waste Matter in the Manufacture of Parchment Paper—Mother of Pearl Waste—Petroleum Residues—Platinum Residues—Broken Porcelain. Earthenware and Glass—Salt Waste—Slate Waste—Sulphur—Burnt Pyrites—Silk Waste—Soap Makers' Waste—Alkali Waste and the Recovery of Soda—Waste Produced in Grinding Mirrors—Waste Products in the Manufacture of Starch—Stearic Acid—Vegetable Ivory Waste—Turf—Waste Waters of Cloth Factories—Wine Residues—Tinplate Waste—Wool Waste—Wool Sweat—The Waste Liquids from Sugar Works—Index.

# Writing Inks and Sealing Waxes.

**INK MANUFACTURE** : Including Writing, Copying, Lithographic, Marking, Stamping, and Laundry Inks. By SIGMUND LEHNER. Three Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 162 pp. Translated from the German of the Fifth Edition. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home ; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Varieties of Ink—Writing Inks—Raw Materials of Tannin Inks—The Chemical Constitution of the Tannin Inks—Recipes for Tannin Inks—Logwood Tannin Inks—Ferric Inks—Alizarine Inks—Extract Inks—Logwood Inks—Copying Inks—Hektographs—Hektograph Inks—Safety Inks—Ink Extracts and Powders—Preserving Inks—Changes in Ink and the Restoration of Faded Writing—Coloured Inks—Red Inks—Blue Inks—Violet Inks—Yellow Inks—Green Inks—Metallic Inks—Indian Ink—Lithographic Inks and Pencils—Ink Pencils—Marking Inks—Ink Specialities—Sympathetic Inks—Stamping Inks—Laundry or Washing Blue—Index

**SEALING-WAXES, WAFERS AND OTHER ADHESIVES FOR THE HOUSEHOLD, OFFICE, WORKSHOP AND FACTORY.** By H. C. STANDAGE. Crown 8vo. 96 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home ; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Materials Used for Making Sealing-Waxes—The Manufacture of Sealing-Waxes—Wafers—Notes on the Nature of the Materials Used in Making Adhesive Compounds—Cements for Use in the Household—Office Gums, Pastes and Mucilages—Adhesive Compounds for Factory and Workshop Use.

# Lead Ores and Compounds.

**LEAD AND ITS COMPOUNDS.** By THOS. LAMBERT, Technical and Consulting Chemist. Demy 8vo. 226 pp. Forty Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

History—Ores of Lead—Geographical Distribution of the Lead Industry—Chemical and Physical Properties of Lead—Alloys of Lead—Compounds of Lead—Dressing of Lead Ores—Smelting of Lead Ores—Smelting in the Scotch or American Ore-hearth—Smelting in the Shaft or Blast Furnace—Condensation of Lead Fume—Desilverisation, or the Separation of Silver from Argentiferous Lead—Cupellation—The Manufacture of Lead Pipes and Sheets—Protoxide of Lead—Litharge and Massicot—Red Lead or Minium—Lead Poisoning—Lead Substitutes—Zinc and its Compounds—Pumice Stone—Drying Oils and Siccatives—Oil of Turpentine Resin—Classification of Mineral Pigments—Analysis of Raw and Finished Products—Tables—Index.

**NOTES ON LEAD ORES** : Their Distribution and Properties. By JAS. FAIRIE, F.G.S. Crown 8vo. 64 pages. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home ; 3s. abroad.)

# Industrial Hygiene.

**THE RISKS AND DANGERS TO HEALTH OF VARIOUS OCCUPATIONS AND THEIR PREVENTION.** By LEONARD A. PARRY, M.D., B.Sc. (Lond.). 196 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

Occupations which are Accompanied by the Generation and Scattering of Abnormal Quantities of Dust—Trades in which there is Danger of Metallic Poisoning—Certain Chemical Trades—Some Miscellaneous Occupations—Trades in which Various Poisonous Vapours are Inhaled—General Hygienic Considerations—Index.

# Industrial Uses of Air, Steam and Water.

**DRYING BY MEANS OF AIR AND STEAM.** Explanations, Formulæ, and Tables for Use in Practice. Translated from the German of E. HAUSBRAND. Two folding Diagrams and Thirteen Tables. Crown 8vo. 72 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

British and Metric Systems Compared—Centigrade and Fahr. Thermometers—Estimation of the Maximum Weight of Saturated Aqueous Vapour which can be contained in 1 kilo. of Air at Different Pressure and Temperatures—Calculation of the Necessary Weight and Volume of Air, and of the Least Expenditure of Heat, per Drying Apparatus with Heated Air, at the Atmospheric Pressure: *A*, With the Assumption that the Air is *Completely Saturated* with Vapour both before Entry and after Exit from the Apparatus—*B*, When the Atmospheric Air is *Completely Saturated before entry*, but at its *exit* is only  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{3}$  Saturated—*C*, When the Atmospheric Air is *not Saturated* with Moisture before Entering the Drying Apparatus—Drying Apparatus, in which, in the Drying Chamber, a Pressure is Artificially Created, Higher or Lower than that of the Atmosphere—Drying by Means of Superheated Steam, without Air—Heating Surface, Velocity of the Air Current, Dimensions of the Drying Room, Surface of the Drying Material, Losses of Heat—Index.

(See also "*Evaporating, Condensing and Cooling Apparatus*," p. 26.)

**PURE AIR, OZONE AND WATER.** A Practical Treatise of their Utilisation and Value in Oil, Grease, Soap, Paint, Glue and other Industries. By W. B. COWELL. Twelve Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 85 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Atmospheric Air; Lifting of Liquids; Suction Process; Preparing Blown Oils; Preparing Siccative Drying Oils—Compressed Air; Whitewash—Liquid Air; Retrocession—Purification of Water; Water Hardness—Fleshings and Bones—Ozonised Air in the Bleaching and Deodorising of Fats, Glues, etc.; Bleaching Textile Fibres—Appendix: Air and Gases; Pressure of Air at Various Temperatures; Fuel; Table of Combustibles; Saving of Fuel by Heating Feed Water; Table of Solubilities of Scale Making Minerals; British Thermal Units Tables; Volume of the Flow of Steam into the Atmosphere; Temperature of Steam—Index.

## THE INDUSTRIAL USES OF WATER. COMPOSITION—EFFECTS—TROUBLES—REMEDIES—RESIDUARY WATERS—PURIFICATION—ANALYSIS.

By H. DE LA COUX. Royal 8vo. Translated from the French and Revised by ARTHUR MORRIS. 364 pp. 135 Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Chemical Action of Water in Nature and in Industrial Use—Composition of Waters—Solubility of Certain Salts in Water Considered from the Industrial Point of View—Effects on the Boiling of Water—Effects of Water in the Industries—Difficulties with Water—Feed Water for Boilers—Water in Dyeworks, Print Works, and Bleach Works—Water in the Textile Industries and in Conditioning—Water in Soap Works—Water in Laundries and Washhouses—Water in Tanning—Water in Preparing Tannin and Dyewood Extracts—Water in Papermaking—Water in Photography—Water in Sugar Refining—Water in Making Ices and Beverages—Water in Cider Making—Water in Brewing—Water in Distilling—Preliminary Treatment and Apparatus—Substances Used for Preliminary Chemical Purification—Commercial Specialities and their Employment—Precipitation of Matters in Suspension in Water—Apparatus for the Preliminary Chemical Purification of Water—Industrial Filters—Industrial Sterilisation of Water—Residuary Waters and their Purification—Soil Filtration—Purification by Chemical Processes—Analyses—Index.

(See Books on *Smoke Prevention, Engineering and Metallurgy*, p. 26, etc.)



# X Rays.

**PRACTICAL X RAY WORK.** By FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., Member of the Roentgen Society of London; Radiographer to St. George's Hospital; Demonstrator of Physics and Chemistry, and Teacher of Radiography in St. George's Hospital Medical School. Demy 8vo. Twelve Plates from Photographs of X Ray Work. Fifty-two Illustrations. 200 pp. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

**Historical**—Work leading up to the Discovery of the X Rays—The Discovery—**Apparatus and its Management**—Electrical Terms—Sources of Electricity—Induction Coils—Electrostatic Machines—Tubes—Air Pumps—Tube Holders and Stereoscopic Apparatus—Fluorescent Screens—**Practical X Ray Work**—Installations—Radioscopy—Radiography—X Rays in Dentistry—X Rays in Chemistry—X Rays in War—Index.

## List of Plates.

*Frontispiece*—Congenital Dislocation of Hip-Joint.—I., Needle in Finger.—II., Needle in Foot.—III., Revolver Bullet in Calf and Leg.—IV., A Method of Localisation.—V., Stellate Fracture of Patella showing shadow of "Strapping".—VI., Sarcoma.—VII., Six-weeks-old Injury to Elbow showing new Growth of Bone.—VIII., Old Fracture of Tibia and Fibula badly set.—IX., Heart Shadow.—X., Fractured Femur showing Grain of Splint.—XI., Barrall's Method of Localisation.

# India-Rubber and Gutta Percha.

**INDIA-RUBBER AND GUTTA PERCHA.** Translated from the French of T. SEELIGMANN, G. LAMY TORVILHON and H. FALCONNET by JOHN GEDDES MCINTOSH. Royal 8vo.

*[Out of print. Second Edition in preparation.]*

## Contents.

**India-Rubber**—Botanical Origin—Climatology—Soil—Rational Culture and Acclimation of the Different Species of India-Rubber Plants—Methods of Obtaining the Latex—Methods of Preparing Raw or Crude India-Rubber—Classification of the Commercial Species of Raw Rubber—Physical and Chemical Properties of the Latex and of India-Rubber—Mechanical Transformation of Natural Caoutchouc into Washed or Normal Caoutchouc (Purification) and Normal Rubber into Masticated Rubber—Softening, Cutting, Washing, Drying—Preliminary Observations—Vulcanisation of Normal Rubber—Chemical and Physical Properties of Vulcanised Rubber—General Considerations—Hardened Rubber or Ebonite—Considerations on Mineralisation and other Mixtures—Coloration and Dyeing—Analysis of Natural or Normal Rubber and Vulcanised Rubber—Rubber Substitutes—Imitation Rubber.

**Gutta Percha**—Botanical Origin—Climatology—Soil—Rational Culture—Methods of Collection—Classification of the Different Species of Commercial Gutta Percha—Physical and Chemical Properties—Mechanical Transformation—Methods of Analysing—Gutta Percha Substitutes—Index.

# Leather Trades.

**PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE LEATHER INDUSTRY.** By A. M. VILLON. Translated by FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S.; and Corrected by an Eminent Member of the Trade. 500 pp., royal 8vo. 123 Illustrations. Price 21s. net. (Post free, 21s. 6d. home; 22s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Preface—Translator's Preface—List of Illustrations.  
Part I., **Materials used in Tanning**—Skins: Skin and its Structure; Skins used in Tanning; Various Skins and their Uses—Tannin and Tanning Substances: Tannin; Barks (Oak); Barks other than Oak; Tanning Woods; Tannin-bearing Leaves; Excrescences; Tan-bearing Fruits; Tan-bearing Roots and Bulbs; Tanning Juices; Tanning Substances used in Various Countries; Tannin Extracts; Estimation of Tannin and Tannin Principles.

Part II., **Tanning**—The Installation of a Tannery: Tan Furnaces; Chimneys, Boilers, etc.; Steam Engines—Grinding and Trituration of Tanning Substances: Cutting up Bark; Grinding Bark; The Grinding of Tan Woods; Powdering Fruit, Galls and Grains; Notes on the Grinding of Bark—Manufacture of Sole Leather: Soaking; Sweating and Unhairing; Plumping and Colouring; Handling; Tanning; Tanning Elephants' Hides; Drying; Striking or Pinning—Manufacture of Dressing Leather: Soaking; Depilation; New Processes for the Depilation of Skins; Tanning; Cow Hides; Horse Hides; Goat Skins; Manu-

facture of Split Hides—On Various Methods of Tanning: Mechanical Methods; Physical Methods; Chemical Methods; Tanning with Extracts—Quantity and Quality; Quantity; Net Cost; Quality of Leather—Various Manipulations of Tanned Leather: Second Tanning; Grease Stains; Bleaching Leather; Waterproofing Leather; Weighting Tanned Leather; Preservation of Leather—Tanning Various Skins.

Part III., **Currying**—Waxed Calf: Preparation; Shaving; Stretching or Slicking; Oiling the Grain; Oiling the Flesh Side; Whitening and Graining; Waxing; Finishing; Dry Finishing; Finishing in Colour; Cost—White Calf: Finishing in White—Cow Hide for Upper Leathers: Black Cow Hide; White Cow Hide; Coloured Cow Hide—Smooth Cow Hide—Black Leather—Miscellaneous Hides: Horse; Goat; Goat; Waxed Goat Skin; Matt Goat Skin—Russia Leather: Russia Leather; Artificial Russia Leather.

Part IV., **Enamelled, Hungary and Chamoy Leather, Morocco, Parchment, Furs and Artificial Leather**—Enamelled Leather: Varnish Manufacture; Application of the Enamel; Enamelling in Colour—Hungary Leather: Preliminary; Wet Work or Preparation; Aluming; Dressing or Loft Work; Tallowing; Hungary Leather from Various Hides—Tawing: Preparatory Operations; Dressing; Dyeing Tawed Skins; Rugs—Chamoy Leather—Morocco: Preliminary Operations; Morocco Tanning; Mordants used in Morocco Manufacture; Natural Colours used in Morocco Dyeing; Artificial Colours; Different Methods of Dyeing; Dyeing with Natural Colours; Dyeing with Aniline Colours; Dyeing with Metallic Salts; Leather Printing; Finishing Morocco; Shagreen; Bronzed Leather—Gilding and Silvering: Gilding; Silvering; Nickel and Cobalt—Parchment—Furs and Furriery: Preliminary Remarks; Indigenous Furs; Foreign Furs from Hot Countries; Foreign Furs from Cold Countries; Furs from Birds' Skins; Preparation of Furs; Dressing; Colouring; Preparation of Birds' Skins; Preservation of Furs—Artificial Leather: Leather made from Scraps; Compressed Leather; American Cloth; Papier Mâché; Linoleum; Artificial Leather.

Part V., **Leather Testing and the Theory of Tanning**—Testing and Analysis of Leather: Physical Testing of Tanned Leather; Chemical Analysis—The Theory of Tanning and the other Operations of the Leather and Skin Industry: Theory of Soaking; Theory of Unhairing; Theory of Swelling; Theory of Handling; Theory of Tanning; Theory of the Action of Tannin on the Skin; Theory of Hungary Leather Making; Theory of Tawing; Theory of Chamoy Leather Making; Theory of Mineral Tanning.

Part VI., **Uses of Leather**—Machine Belts: Manufacture of Belting; Leather Chain Belts; Various Belts; Use of Belts—Boot and Shoe-making: Boots and Shoes; Laces—Saddlery: Composition of a Saddle; Construction of a Saddle—Harness: The Pack Saddle; Harness—Military Equipment—Glove Making—Carriage Building—Mechanical Uses.

Appendix, **The World's Commerce in Leather**—Europe; America; Asia; Africa; Australasia—Index

**THE LEATHER WORKER'S MANUAL.** Being a Compendium of Practical Recipes and Working Formulæ for Curriers, Bootmakers, Leather Dressers, Blacking Manufacturers, Saddlers, Fancy Leather Workers. By H. C. STANDAGE. Demy 8vo. 165 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Blackings, Polishes, Glosses, Dressings, Renovators, etc., for Boot and Shoe Leather—Harness Blackings, Dressings, Greases, Compositions, Soaps, and Boot-top Powders and Liquids, etc., etc.—Leather Grinders' Sundries—Currier's Seasonings, Blacking Compounds, Dressings, Finishes, Glosses, etc.—Dyes and Stains for Leather—Miscellaneous Information—Chrome Tannage—Index.

## Books on Pottery, Bricks, Tiles, Glass, etc.

**THE MANUAL OF PRACTICAL POTTING.** Compiled by Experts, and Edited by CHAS. F. BINNS. Revised Third Edition and Enlarged. 200 pp. Price 17s. 6d. net. (Post free, 17s. 10d. home; 18s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Introduction.** The Rise and Progress of the Potter's Art—**Bodies.** China and Porcelain Bodies, Parian Bodies, Semi-porcelain and Vitreous Bodies, Mortar Bodies, Earthenware Granite and C.C. Bodies, Miscellaneous Bodies, Sagger and Crucible Clays, Coloured Bodies, Jasper Bodies, Coloured Bodies for Mosaic Painting, Encaustic Tile Bodies, Body Stains, Coloured Dips—**Glazes.** China Glazes, Ironstone Glazes, Earthenware Glazes, Glazes without Lead, Miscellaneous Glazes, Coloured Glazes, Majolica Colours—**Gold and Gold Colours.** Gold, Purple of Cassius, Marone and Ruby, Enamel Coloured Bases, Enamel Colour Fluxes, Enamel Colours, Mixed Enamel Colours, Antique and Vellum Enamel Colours, Underglaze Colours, Underglaze Colour Fluxes, Mixed Underglaze Colours, Flow Powders, Oils and Varnishes—**Means and Methods.** Reclamation of Waste Gold, The Use of Cobalt, Notes on Enamel Colours, Liquid or Bright Gold—**Classification and Analysis.** Classification of Clay Ware, Lord Playfair's Analysis of Clays, The Markets of

the World, Time and Scale of Firing, Weights of Potter's Material, Decorated Goods Count—Comparative Loss of Weight of Clays—Ground Felspar Calculations—The Conversion of Slop Body Recipes into Dry Weight—The Cost of Prepared Earthenware Clay—Forms and Tables. Articles of Apprenticeship, Manufacturer's Guide to Stocktaking, Table of Relative Values of Potter's Materials, Hourly Wages Table, Workman's Settling Table, Comparative Guide for Earthenware and China Manufacturers in the use of Slop Flint and Slop Stone, Foreign Terms applied to Earthenware and China Goods, Table for the Conversion of Metrical Weights and Measures on the Continent and South America—Index.

**CERAMIC TECHNOLOGY:** Being some Aspects of Technical Science as Applied to Pottery Manufacture. Edited by CHARLES F. BINNS. 100 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 12s. 10d. home; 13s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Preface—The Chemistry of Pottery—Analysis and Synthesis—Clays and their Components—The Biscuit Oven—Pyrometry—Glazes and their Composition—Colours and Colour-making—Index.

**A TREATISE ON THE CERAMIC INDUSTRIES. A**

Complete Manual for Pottery, Tile and Brick Works. By EMILE BOURRY. Translated from the French by WILTON P. RIX, Examiner in Pottery and Porcelain to the City and Guilds of London Technical Institute, Pottery Instructor to the Hanley School Board. Royal 8vo. 760 pp. 323 Illustrations. Price 21s. net. (Post free, 22s. home; 24s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Part I., **General Pottery Methods.** Definition and History. Definitions and Classification of Ceramic Products—Historic Summary of the Ceramic Art—Raw Materials of Bodies. Clays: Pure Clay and Natural Clays—Various Raw Materials: Analogous to Clay—Agglomerative and Agglutinative—Opening—Fusible—Refractory—Trials of Raw Materials—Plastic Bodies. Properties and Composition—Preparation of Raw Materials: Disaggregation—Purification—Preparation of Bodies: By Plastic Method—By Dry Method—By Liquid Method—Formation. Processes of Formation: Throwing—Expression—Moulding by Hand, on the Jolley, by Compression, by Slip Casting—Slapping—Slipping—Drying. Drying of Bodies—Processes of Drying: By Evaporation—By Aeration—By Heating—By Ventilation—By Absorption—Glazes. Composition and Properties—Raw Materials—Manufacture and Application—Firing. Properties of the Bodies and Glazes during Firing—Description of the Kilns—Working of the Kilns—Decoration. Colouring Materials—Processes of Decoration.

Part II., **Special Pottery Methods.** Terra Cottas. Classification: Plain Ordinary, Hollow, Ornamental, Vitrified, and Light Bricks—Ordinary and Black Tiles—Paving Tiles—Pipes—Architectural Terra Cottas—Vases, Statues and Decorative Objects—Common Pottery—Pottery for Water and Filters—Tobacco Pipes—Lustre Ware—Properties and Tests for Terra Cottas—Fireclay Goods. Classification: Argillaceous, Aluminous, Carboniferous, Silicious and Basic Fireclay Goods—Fireclay Mortar (Pug)—Tests for Fireclay Goods—Faïences. Varnished Faïences—Enamelled Faïences—Silicious Faïences—Pipeclay Faïences—Pebble Work—Feldspathic Faïences—Composition, Processes of Manufacture and General Arrangements of Faïence Potteries—Stoneware. Stoneware Properly So-called: Paving Tiles—Pipes—Sanitary Ware—Stoneware for Food Purposes and Chemical Productions—Architectural Stoneware—Vases, Statues and other Decorative Objects—Fine Stoneware—Porcelain. Hard Porcelain for Table Ware and Decoration, for the Fire, for Electrical Conduits, for Mechanical Purposes; Architectural Porcelain, and Dull or Biscuit Porcelain—Soft Phosphated or English Porcelain—Soft Vitreous Porcelain, French and New Sèvres—Argillaceous Soft or Seger's Porcelain—Dull Soft or Parian Porcelain—Dull Feldspathic Soft Porcelain—Index.

**POTTERY DECORATING.** By R. HAINBACH. Translated from the German. Crown 8vo. 22 Illustrations. Deals with Glazes, Colours, etc. [In the Press.]

**ARCHITECTURAL POTTERY.** Bricks, Tiles, Pipes, Enamelled Terra-cottas, Ordinary and Incrusted Quarries, Stoneware Mosaics, Faïences and Architectural Stoneware. By LEON LEFÈVRE. With Five Plates. 950 Illustrations in the Text, and numerous estimates. 500 pp., royal 8vo. Translated from the French by K. H. BIRD, M.A., and W. MOORE BINNS. Price 15s. net. (Post free, 15s. 6d. home; 16s. 6d. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Part I. Plain Undecorated Pottery.—Clays, Bricks, Tiles, Pipes, Chimney Flues, Terra-cotta.

Part II. Made-up or Decorated Pottery.

**THE ART OF RIVETING GLASS, CHINA AND EARTHENWARE.** By J. HOWARTH. Second Edition. Paper Cover. Price 1s. net; by post, home or abroad, 1s. 1d.

**NOTES ON POTTERY CLAYS.** Their Distribution, Properties, Uses and Analyses of Ball Clays, China Clays and China Stone. By JAS. FAIRIE, F.G.S. 132 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d. net. (Post free, 3s. 9d. home; 3s. 10d. abroad.)

A Reissue of

**THE HISTORY OF THE STAFFORDSHIRE POTTERIES; AND THE RISE AND PROGRESS OF THE MANUFACTURE OF POTTERY AND PORCELAIN.**

With References to Genuine Specimens, and Notices of Eminent Potters. By SIMEON SHAW. (Originally Published in 1829.) 265 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Introductory Chapter showing the position of the Pottery Trade at the present time (1899)—Preliminary Remarks—The Potteries, comprising Tunstall, Brownhills, Greenfield and New Field, Golden Hill, Latebrook, Green Lane, Burslem, Longport and Dale Hall, Hot Lane and Cobridge, Hanley and Shelton, Etruria, Stoke, Penkhull, Fenton, Lane Delph, Foley, Lane End—On the Origin of the Art, and its Practice among the early Nations—Manufacture of Pottery, prior to 1700—The Introduction of Red Porcelain by Messrs. Elers, of Bradwell, 1690—Progress of the Manufacture from 1700 to Mr. Wedgwood's commencement in 1760—Introduction of Fluid Glaze—Extension of the Manufacture of Cream Colour—Mr. Wedgwood's Queen's Ware—Jasper, and Appointment of Potter to Her Majesty—Black Printing—Introduction of Porcelain. Mr. W. Littler's Porcelain—Mr. Cookworthy's Discovery of Kaolin and Petuntse, and Patent—Sold to Mr. Champion—resold to the New Hall Com.—Extension of Term—Blue Printed Pottery. Mr. Turner, Mr. Spode (1), Mr. Baddeley, Mr. Spode (2), Messrs. Turner, Mr. Wood, Mr. Wilson, Mr. Minton—Great Change in Patterns of Blue Printed—Introduction of Lustre Pottery. Improvements in Pottery and Porcelain subsequent to 1800.

A Reissue of

**THE CHEMISTRY OF THE SEVERAL NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL HETEROGENEOUS COMPOUNDS USED IN MANUFACTURING PORCELAIN, GLASS AND POTTERY.** By SIMEON SHAW.

(Originally published in 1837.) 750 pp. Royal 8vo. Price 14s. net. (Post free, 15s. home; 17s. abroad.)

## Glassware, Glass Staining and Painting.

**RECIPES FOR FLINT GLASS MAKING.** By a British Glass Master and Mixer. Sixty Recipes. Being Leaves from the Mixing Book of several experts in the Flint Glass Trade, containing up-to-date recipes and valuable information as to Crystal, Demi-crystal and Coloured Glass in its many varieties. It contains the recipes for cheap metal suited to pressing, blowing, etc., as well as the most costly crystal and ruby. Crown 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 9d. home; 10s. 10d. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Ruby—Ruby from Copper—Flint for using with the Ruby for Coating—A German Metal—Cornelian, or Alabaster—Sapphire Blue—Crysophis—Opal—Turquoise Blue—Gold Colour—Dark Green—Green (common)—Green for Malachite—Blue for Malachite—Black for Melachite—Black—Common Canary Batch—Canary—White Opaque Glass—Sealing-wax Red—Flint—Flint Glass (Crystal and Demi)—Achromatic Glass—Paste Glass—White Enamel—Firestone—Dead White (for moons)—White Agate—Canary—Canary Enamel—Index.

## A TREATISE ON THE ART OF GLASS PAINTING.

Prefaced with a Review of Ancient Glass. By ERNEST R. SUFFLING. With One Coloured Plate and Thirty-seven Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 140 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

A Short History of Stained Glass—Designing Scale Drawings—Cartoons and the Cut Line—Various Kinds of Glass Cutting for Windows—The Colours and Brushes used in Glass Painting—Painting on Glass, Dispersed Patterns—Diapered Patterns—Aciding—Firing—Fret Lead Glazing—Index.

## PAINTING ON GLASS AND PORCELAIN AND ENAMEL PAINTING.

A Complete Introduction to the Preparation of all the Colours and Fluxes used for Painting on Porcelain, Enamel, Faience and Stoneware, the Coloured Pastes and Coloured Glasses, together with a Minute Description of the Firing of Colours and Enamels. By FELIX HERMANN, Technical Chemist. With Eighteen Illustrations. 300 pp. Translated from the German second and enlarged Edition. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)

## Paper Making, Paper Dyeing, and Testing.

**THE DYEING OF PAPER PULP.** A Practical Treatise for the use of Papermakers, Paperstainers, Students and others. By JULIUS ERFURT, Manager of a Paper Mill. Translated into English and Edited with Additions by JULIUS HÜBNER, F.C.S., Lecturer on Papermaking at the Manchester Municipal Technical School. With Illustrations and 157 patterns of paper dyed in the pulp. Royal 8vo, 180 pp. Price 15s. net. (Post free, 15s. 6d. home; 16s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Behaviour of the Paper Fibres during the Process of Dyeing, Theory of the Mordant—Colour Fixing Mediums (Mordants)—Influence of the Quality of the Water Used—Inorganic Colours—Organic Colours—Practical Application of the Coal Tar Colours according to their Properties and their Behaviour towards the Different Paper Fibres—Dyed Patterns on Various Pulp Mixtures—Dyeing to Shade—Index.

**THE PAPER MILL CHEMIST.** By HENRY P. STEVENS, M.A., Ph.D., F.I.C. Royal 12mo. 60 Illustrations. [*In the press.*]

### Contents.

**Introduction.**—Dealing with the Apparatus required in Chemical Work and General Chemical Manipulation, introducing the subject of Qualitative and Quantitative Analysis. **Fuels.**—Analysis of Coal, Coke and other Fuels—Sampling and Testing for Moisture, Ash, Calorific Value, etc.—Comparative Heating Value of different Fuels and Relative Efficiency. **Water.**—Analysis for Steam Raising and for Paper Making Purposes generally—Water Softening and Purification—A List of the more important Water Softening Plant, giving Power required, Weight, Space Occupied, Out-put and Approximate Cost. **Raw Materials and Detection of Adulterants.**—Analysis and Valuation of the more important Chemicals used in Paper Making, including Lime, Caustic Soda, Sodium Carbonate, Mineral Acids, Bleach Antichlor, Alum, Rosin and Rosin Size, Glue Gelatin and Casein, Starch, China Clay, Blanc Fixe, Satin White and other Loading Materials, Mineral Colours and Aniline Dyes. **Manufacturing Operations.**—Rags and the Chemical Control of Rag Boiling—Esparto Boiling—Wood Boiling—Testing Spent Liquors and Recovered Ash—Experimental Tests with Raw Fibrous Materials—Boiling in Autoclaves—Bleaching and making up Hand Sheets—Examination of Sulphite Liquors—Estimation of Moisture in Pulp and Half-stuff—Recommendations of the British Wood Pulp Association. **Finished Products.**—Paper Testing, including Physical, Chemical and Microscopical Tests, Area, Weight, Thickness, Apparent Specific Gravity, Bulk or Air Space. Determination of Machine Direction, Thickness, Strength, Stretch, Resistance to Crumpling and Friction, Transparency, Absorbency and other qualities of Blotting Papers—Determination of the Permeability of Filtering Papers—Detection and Estimation of Animal and Vegetable Size in Paper—Sizing Qualities of Paper—Fibrous Constituents—Microscopical Examination of Fibres—The Effect of Beating on Fibres—Staining Fibres—Mineral Matter—Ash—Qualitative and Quantitative Examination of Mineral Matter—Examination of Coated Papers and Colouring Matters in Paper.

## CONTENTS OF "THE TESTING OF PAPER"—*continued.*

**Tables.**—English and Metrical Weights and Measures with Equivalents—Conversion of Grams to Grains and *vice versa*—Equivalent Costs per lb., cwt., and ton—Decimal Equivalents of lbs., qrs., and cwts.—Thermometric and Barometric Scales—Atomic Weights and Molecular Weights—Factors for Calculating the Percentage of Substance Sought from the Weight of Substance Found—Table of Solubilities of Substances Treated of in Paper Making—Specific Gravity Tables of such substances as are used in Paper Making, including Sulphuric Acid, Hydrochloric Acid, Bleach, Milk of Lime, Caustic Soda, Carbonate of Soda, etc., giving Percentage Strength with Specific Gravity and Degrees Tw.—Hardness Table for Soap Tests—Dew Point—Wet and Dry Bulb Tables—Properties of Saturated Steam, giving Temperature, Pressure and Volume—List of Different Machines used in the Paper Making Industry, giving Size, Weight, Space Occupied, Power to Drive, Out-put and Approximate Cost—Calculation of Moisture in Pulp—Rag-Boiling Tables, giving Percentages of Lime, Soda and Time required—Loss in Weight in Rags and other Raw Materials during Boiling and Bleaching—Conditions of Buying and Selling as laid down by the Paper Makers' Association—Table of Names and Sizes of Papers—Table for ascertaining the Weight per Ream from the Weight per Sheet—Calculations of Areas and Volumes—Logarithms—Blank pages for Notes.

**THE TREATMENT OF PAPER FOR SPECIAL PURPOSES.** By L. E. ANDÉS. Translated from the German. Crown 8vo. 48 Illustrations. 250 pp. [*In the Press.*]

### Contents.

I., **Parchment Paper, Vegetable Parchment.**—The Parchment Paper Machine—Opaque Supple Parchment Paper—Thick Parchment—Krugler's Parchment Paper and Parchment Slates—Double and Triple Osmotic Parchment—Utilising Waste Parchment Paper—Parchmented Linen and Cotton—Parchment Millboard—Imitation Horn and Ivory from Parchment Paper—Imitation Parchment Paper—Artificial Parchment—Testing the Sulphuric Acid. II., **Papers for Transfer Pictures.** III., **Papers for Preservative and Packing Purposes.**—Butter Paper—Wax Paper—Paraffin Paper—Wrapping Paper for Silverware—Waterproof Paper—Anticorrosive Paper. IV., **Grained Transfer Papers.** V., **Fireproof and Antifalsification Papers.** VI., **Paper Articles.**—Vulcanised Paper Maché—Paper Bottles—Plastic Articles of Paper—Waterproof Coverings for Walls and Ceilings—Paper Wheels, Roofing and Boats—Paper Barrels—Paper Boxes—Paper Horseshoes. VII., **Gummed Paper.** VIII., **Hectograph Papers.** IX., **Insecticide Papers.**—Fly Papers—Moth Papers. X., **Chalk and Leather Papers.**—Glacé Chalk Paper—Leather Paper—Imitation Leather. XI., **Luminous Papers—Blue-Print Papers—Blotting Papers.** XII., **Metal Papers—Medicated Papers.** XIII., **Marbled Papers.** XIV., **Tracing and Copying Papers—Iridescent or Mother of Pearl Papers.** XV., **Photographic Papers—Shellac Paper—Fumigating Papers—Test Papers.** XVI., **Papers for Cleaning and Polishing Purposes—Glass Paper—Pumic Paper—Emery Paper.** XVII., **Lithographic Transfer Papers.** XIX., **Sundry Special Papers—Satin Paper—Enamel Paper—Cork Paper—Split Paper—Electric Paper—Paper Matches—Magic Pictures—Laundry Blue Papers—Blue Paper for Bleachers.** XX., **Waterproof Papers—Washable Drawing Papers—Washable Card—Washable Coloured Paper—Waterproof Millboard—Sugar Paper.** XXI., **The Characteristics of Paper—Paper Testing.**

## Enamelling on Metal.

**ENAMELS AND ENAMELLING.** For Enamel Makers, Workers in Gold and Silver, and Manufacturers of Objects of Art. By PAUL RANDAU. Translated from the German. With Sixteen Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 180 pp. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)

**THE ART OF ENAMELLING ON METAL.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Twenty-eight Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 60 pp. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home and abroad.)

## Silk Manufacture.

**SILK THROWING AND WASTE SILK SPINNING.** By HOLLINS RAYNER. Demy 8vo. 170 pp. 117 Illus. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

The Silkworm—Cocoon Reeling and Qualities of Silk—Silk Throwing—Silk Wastes—The Preparation of Silk Waste for Degumming—Silk Waste Degumming, Schapping and Discharging—The Opening and Dressing of Wastes—Silk Waste "Drawing" or "Preparing" Machinery—Long Spinning—Short Spinning—Spinning and Finishing Processes—Utilisation of Waste Products—Noil Spinning—Exhaust Noil Spinning.

# Books on Textile and Dyeing Subjects.

## THE CHEMICAL TECHNOLOGY OF TEXTILE

**FIBRES:** Their Origin, Structure, Preparation, Washing, Bleaching, Dyeing, Printing and Dressing. By Dr. GEORG VON GEORGIEVICS. Translated from the German by CHARLES SALTER. 320 pp. Forty-seven Illustrations. Royal 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

### Contents.

The Textile Fibres—Washing, Bleaching, Carbonising—Mordants and Mordanting—Dyeing—Printing—Dressing and Finishing.

## POWER-LOOM WEAVING AND YARN NUMBERING,

According to Various Systems, with Conversion Tables. Translated from the German of ANTHON GRUNER. **With Twenty-six Diagrams in Colours.** 150 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 9d. home; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Power-Loom Weaving in General. Various Systems of Looms—Mounting and Starting the Power-Loom. English Looms—Tappet or Treadle Looms—Dobbies—General Remarks on the Numbering, Reeling and Packing of Yarn—Appendix—Useful Hints. Calculating Warps—Weft Calculations—Calculations of Cost Price in Hanks.

## TEXTILE RAW MATERIALS AND THEIR CONVERSION INTO YARNS.

(The Study of the Raw Materials and the Technology of the Spinning Process.) By JULIUS ZIPSER. Translated from German by CHARLES SALTER. 302 Illustrations. 500 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

#### PART I.—The Raw Materials Used in the Textile Industry.

MINERAL RAW MATERIALS. VEGETABLE RAW MATERIALS. ANIMAL RAW MATERIALS.

#### PART II.—The Technology of Spinning or the Conversion of Textile Raw Materials into Yarn.

SPINNING VEGETABLE RAW MATERIALS. Cotton Spinning—Installation of a Cotton Mill—Spinning Waste Cotton and Waste Cotton Yarns—Flax Spinning—Fine Spinning—Tow Spinning—Hemp Spinning—Spinning Hemp Tow String—Jute Spinning—Spinning Jute Line Yarn—Utilising Jute Waste.

#### PART III.—Spinning Animal Raw Materials.

Spinning Carded Woollen Yarn—Finishing Yarn—Worsted Spinning—Finishing Worsted Yarn—Artificial Wool or Shoddy Spinning—Shoddy and Mungo Manufacture—Spinning Shoddy and other Wool Substitutes—Spinning Waste Silk—Chappe Silk—Fine Spinning—Index.

## GRAMMAR OF TEXTILE DESIGN. By H. NISBET,

Weaving and Designing Master, Bolton Municipal Technical School. Demy 8vo. 280 pp. 490 Illustrations and Diagrams. Price 6s. net. (Post free, 6s. 10d. home; 7s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Chapter I., INTRODUCTION.—General Principle of Fabric Structure and the use of Design Paper.

Chapter II., THE PLAIN WEAVE AND ITS MODIFICATIONS.—The Plain, Calico, or Tobby Weave.—Firmness of Texture—Variety of Texture—Variety of Form: Ribbed Fabrics—Corded Fabrics—Matt Weaves.

Chapter III., TWILL AND KINDRED WEAVES.—Classification of Twill Weaves.—1. **Continuous Twills**—(a) *Warp-face Twills*—(b) *Went-face Twills*—(c) *Warp and Went-face Twills*—The Angle of Twill—Influences affecting the Prominence of Twills and Kindred Weaves (a) *Character of Weave*, (b) *Character of Yarn*, (c) *Number of Threads per Inch*, (d) *Direction of Twill in Relation to the Direction of Twist in Yarn*—2. **Zigzag or Wavy Twills**—3. **Rearranged Twills:** Satin Weaves—Table of Intervals of Selection for the Construction of Satin Weaves—Corkscrew Twills—Rearrangement of Twill Weaves on Satin and other Bases—4. **Combined Twills**—5. **Broken Twills**—6. **Figured or Ornamented Twills.**

Chapter IV., DIAMOND AND KINDRED WEAVES.—**Diamond Weaves.**—Honeycomb and Kindred Weaves—Brighton Weaves—Sponge Weaves—Huck-a-Back and Kindred Weaves—Grecian Weaves—Linear Zigzag Weaves.

[Continued on next page.]

# CONTENTS OF "GRAMMAR OF TEXTILE DESIGN"—

*continued.*

Chapter V., **BEDFORD CORDS.**—Plain Calico-ribbed Bedford Cords—Plain Twill-ribbed Bedford Cords—Figured Bedford Cords—Tabulated Data of Particulars relating to the Manufacture of Seventeen Varieties of Bedford Cord Fabrics described in this Chapter.

Chapter VI., **BACKED FABRICS.**—Weft-backed Fabrics—Warp-backed Fabrics—Reversible or Double-faced Fabrics.

Chapter VII., **FUSTIANS.**—Varieties of Fustians.—Imperials or Swansdowns—Cantoon or Diagonals—Moleskins—Beavertees—Velveteens and Velvetene Cutting—Ribbed or Corded Velvetene—Figured Velvetene—**Corduroy**—Figured Corduroy—Corduroy Cutting Machines.

Chapter VIII., **TERRY PILE FABRICS.**—Methods of producing Terry Pile on Textile Fabrics—Terry-forming Devices—Varieties of Terry Fabrics—Action of the Reed in Relation to Shedding—Figured Terry Weaving—Practical Details of Terry Weaving.

Chapter IX., **GAUZE AND LENO FABRICS.**—**Gauze, Net Leno, and Leno Brocade Varieties of Cross-Weaving.**—Plain Gauze, and a Heald Gauze or Leno Harness—Net Leno Fabrics—Gauze and Net Leno Figuring by means of several Back Standard Healds to each Doup Heald—**Leno Specialities produced by a System of Crossing Warp Ends in front of the Reed**—A Device for the Production of Special Leno Effects—Full Cross Leno Fabrics—Relative Merits of a Top and a Bottom Doup Harness—Relative Merits of Different Types of Dobbies for Gauze and Leno Fabrics—Shaking Devices for Leno Weaving—Practical Details of Leno Weaving—**Tempered Steel-wire Doup Harnesses for Cross-weaving**—Mock or Imitation Leno Fabrics.

Chapter X., **TISSUE, LAPPET, AND SWIVEL FIGURING; ALSO ONDULÉ EFFECTS, AND LOOPED FABRICS.**—**Tissue Figuring**—Madras Muslin Curtains—**Lappet Figuring**—Spot Lappet Figuring—**Swivel Figuring**—**Woven Ondulé Effects**—Loom for Weaving Ondulé Effects—Weft Ondulé Effects—**Looped Fabrics.**—INDEX.

**NEEDLEWORK AND DESIGN.** By Miss M. E. WILKINSON. Quarto. 24 Plates and Text. 52 pp. *[In the Press.]*

**HOME LACE-MAKING.** A Handbook for Teachers and Pupils. By M. E. W. MILROY. Crown 8vo. 64 pp. With 3 Plates and 9 Diagrams. Price 1s. net. (Post free, 1s. 3d. home; 1s. 4d. abroad.)

**THE CHEMISTRY OF HAT MANUFACTURING.** Lectures delivered before the Hat Manufacturers' Association. By WATSON SMITH, F.C.S., F.I.C. Revised and Edited by ALBERT SHONK. Crown 8vo. 132 pp. 16 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 9d. home; 7s. 10d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Textile Fibres, principally Wool, Fur, and Hair—Water: its Chemistry and Properties; Impurities and their Action; Tests of Purity—Acids and Alkalis—Boric Acid, Borax, Soap—Shellac, Wood Spirit, and the Stiffening and Proofing Process—Mordants: their Nature and Use—Dyestuffs and Colours—Dyeing of Wool and Fur; and Optical Properties of Colours—Index.

**THE TECHNICAL TESTING OF YARNS AND TEXTILE FABRICS.** With Reference to Official Specifications. Translated from the German of Dr. J. HERZFELD. Second Edition. Sixty-nine Illustrations. 200 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Yarn Testing. Determining the Yarn Number—Testing the Length of Yarns—Examination of the External Appearance of Yarn—Determining the Twist of Yarn and Twist—Determination of Tensile Strength and Elasticity—Estimating the Percentage of Fat in Yarn—Determination of Moisture (Conditioning)—Appendix.

**DECORATIVE AND FANCY TEXTILE FABRICS.**

By R. T. LORD. Manufacturers and Designers of Carpets, Damask, Dress and all Textile Fabrics. 200 pp. Demy 8vo. 132 Designs and Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

**THEORY AND PRACTICE OF DAMASK WEAVING.**

By H. KINZER and K. WALTER. Royal 8vo. Eighteen Folding Plates. Six Illustrations. Translated from the German. 110 pp. Price 8s. 6d. net. (Post free, 9s. home; 9s. 6d. abroad.)



**TEXTILE BOOKS**—*continued.***Contents.**

The Various Sorts of Damask Fabrics—Drill (Ticking, Handloom-made)—Whole Damask for Tablecloths—Damask with Ground- and Connecting-warp Threads—Furniture Damask—Lampas or Hangings—Church Damasks—The Manufacture of Whole Damask—Damask Arrangement with and without Cross-Shedding—The Altered Cone-arrangement—The Principle of the Corner Lifting Cord—The Roller Principle—The Combination of the Jacquard with the so-called Damask Machine—The Special Damask Machine—The Combination of Two Tyings.

**FAULTS IN THE MANUFACTURE OF WOOLLEN GOODS AND THEIR PREVENTION.** By NICOLAS

REISER. Translated from the Second German Edition. Crown 8vo. Sixty-three Illustrations. 170 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Improperly Chosen Raw Material or Improper Mixtures—Wrong Treatment of the Material in Washing, Carbonisation, Drying, Dyeing and Spinning—Improper Spacing of the Goods in the Loom—Wrong Placing of Colours—Wrong Weight or Width of the Goods—Breaking of Warp and Weft Threads—Presence of Doubles, Singles, Thick, Loose, and too Hard Twisted Threads as well as Tangles, Thick Knots and the Like—Errors in Cross-weaving—Inequalities, *i.e.*, Bands and Stripes—Dirty Borders—Defective Selvedges—Holes and Buttons—Rubbed Places—Creases—Spots—Loose and Bad Colours—Badly Dyed Selvedges—Hard Goods—Brittle Goods—Uneven Goods—Removal of Bands, Stripes, Creases and Spots.

**SPINNING AND WEAVING CALCULATIONS**, especially relating to Woollens. From the German of N. REISER. Thirty-four Illustrations. Tables. 160 pp. Demy 8vo. 1904. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)**Contents.**

Calculating the Raw Material—Proportion of Different Grades of Wool to Furnish a Mixture at a Given Price—Quantity to Produce a Given Length—Yarn Calculations—Yarn Number—Working Calculations—Calculating the Reed Count—Cost of Weaving, etc.

**WATERPROOFING OF FABRICS.** By Dr. S. MIERZINSKI.

Crown 8vo. 104 pp. 29 Illus. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 4d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Introduction—Preliminary Treatment of the Fabric—Waterproofing with Acetate of Alumina—Impregnation of the Fabric—Drying—Waterproofing with Paraffin—Waterproofing with Ammonium Cuprate—Waterproofing with Metallic Oxides—Coloured Waterproof Fabrics—Waterproofing with Gelatine, Tannin, Caseinate of Lime and other Bodies—Manufacture of Tarpaulin—British Waterproofing Patents—Index.

**HOW TO MAKE A WOOLLEN MILL PAY.** By JOHN

MACKIE. Crown 8vo. 76 pp. Price 3s. 6d. net. (Post free, 3s. 9d. home; 3s. 10d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Blends, Piles, or Mixtures of Clean Scoured Wools—Dyed Wool Book—The Order Book—Pattern Duplicate Books—Management and Oversight—Constant Inspection of Mill Departments—Importance of Delivering Goods to Time, Shade, Strength, etc.—Plums.

(For "Textile Soaps and Oils" see p. 7.)

**Dyeing, Colour Printing, Matching and Dye-stuffs.****THE COLOUR PRINTING OF CARPET YARNS.** Manual

for Colour Chemists and Textile Printers. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Seventeen Illustrations. 136 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Structure and Constitution of Wool Fibre—Yarn Scouring—Scouring Materials—Water for Scouring—Bleaching Carpet Yarns—Colour Making for Yarn Printing—Colour Printing Pastes—Colour Recipes for Yarn Printing—Science of Colour Mixing—Matching of Colours—"Hank" Printing—Printing Tapestry Carpet Yarns—Yarn Printing—Steaming Printed Yarns—Washing of Steamed Yarns—Aniline Colours Suitable for Yarn Printing—Glossary of Dyes and Dye-wares used in Wood Yarn Printing—Appendix.

**THE SCIENCE OF COLOUR MIXING.** A Manual intended for the use of Dyers, Calico Printers and Colour Chemists. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Forty-one Illustrations, **Five Coloured Plates, and Four Plates showing Eleven Dyed Specimens of Fabrics.** 132 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Colour a Sensation; Colours of Illuminated Bodies; Colours of Opaque and Transparent Bodies; Surface Colour—Analysis of Light; Spectrum; Homogeneous Colours; Ready Method of Obtaining a Spectrum—Examination of Solar Spectrum; The Spectroscope and Its Construction; Colourists' Use of the Spectroscope—Colour by Absorption; Solutions and Dyed Fabrics; Dichroic Coloured Fabrics in Gaslight—Colour Primaries of the Scientist *versus* the Dyer and Artist; Colour Mixing by Rotation and Lye Dyeing; Hue, Purity, Brightness; Tints; Shades, Scales, Tones, Sad and Sombre Colours—Colour Mixing; Pure and Impure Greens, Orange and Violets; Large Variety of Shades from few Colours; Consideration of the Practical Primaries: Red, Yellow and Blue—Secondary Colours; Nomenclature of Violet and Purple Group; Tints and Shades of Violet; Changes in Artificial Light—Tertiary Shades; Broken Hues; Absorption Spectra of Tertiary Shades—Appendix: Four Plates with Dyed Specimens Illustrating Text—Index.

**DYERS' MATERIALS:** An Introduction to the Examination, Evaluation and Application of the most important Substances used in Dyeing, Printing, Bleaching and Finishing. By PAUL HEERMAN, Ph.D. Translated from the German by A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Twenty-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 150 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

**COLOUR MATCHING ON TEXTILES.** A Manual intended for the use of Students of Colour Chemistry, Dyeing and Textile Printing. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Coloured Frontispiece. Twenty-nine Illustrations and **Fourteen Specimens of Dyed Fabrics.** Demy 8vo. 132 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Colour Vision and Structure of the Eye—Perception of Colour—Primary and Complementary Colour Sensations—Daylight for Colour Matching—Selection of a Good Pure Light—Diffused Daylight, Direct Sunlight, Blue Skylight, Variability of Daylight, etc., etc.—Matching of Hues—Purity and Luminosity of Colours—Matching Bright Hues—Aid of Tinted Films—Matching Difficulties Arising from Contrast—Examination of Colours by Reflected and Transmitted Lights—Effect of Lustre and Transparency of Fibres in Colour Matching—Matching of Colours on Velvet Pile—Optical Properties of Dye-stuffs, Dichroism, Fluorescence—Use of Tinted Mediums—Orange Film—Defects of the Eye—Yellowing of the Lens—Colour Blindness, etc.—Matching of Dyed Silk Trimmings and Linings and Bindings—Its Difficulties—Behaviour of Shades in Artificial Light—Colour Matching of Old Fabrics, etc.—Examination of Dyed Colours under the Artificial Lights—Electric Arc, Magnesium and Dufton, Gardner Lights, Welsbach, Acetylene, etc.—Testing Qualities of an Illuminant—Influence of the Absorption Spectrum in Changes of Hue under the Artificial Lights—Study of the Causes of Abnormal Modifications of Hue, etc.

**COLOUR: A HANDBOOK OF THE THEORY OF COLOUR.** By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. **With Ten Coloured Plates** and Seventy-two Illustrations. 160 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Colour and Its Production—Cause of Colour in Coloured Bodies—Colour Phenomena and Theories—The Physiology of Light—Contrast—Colour in Decoration and Design—Measurement of Colour.

#### Reissue of

**THE ART OF DYEING WOOL, SILK AND COTTON.** Translated from the French of M. HELLOT, M. MACQUER and M. LE PILEUR D'APLIGNY. First Published in English in 1789. Six Plates. Demy 8vo. 446 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 6d. home; 6s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Part I., The Art of Dyeing Wool and Woollen Cloth, Stuffs, Yarn, Worsted, etc. Part II., The Art of Dyeing Silk. Part III., The Art of Dyeing Cotton and Linen Thread, together with the Method of Stamping Silks, Cottons, etc.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF DYE-STUFFS.** By Dr. GEORG VON GEORGIEVICS. Translated from the Second German Edition. 412 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home ; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Introduction—Coal Tar—Intermediate Products in the Manufacture of Dye-stuffs—The Artificial Dye-stuffs (Coal-tar Dyes)—Nitroso Dye-stuffs—Nitro Dye-stuffs—Azo Dye-stuffs—Substantive Cotton Dye-stuffs—Azoxy stilbene Dye-stuffs—Hydrazones—Ketoneimides—Triphenylmethane Dye-stuffs—Rosolic Acid Dye-stuffs—Xanthene Dye-stuffs—Xanthone Dye-stuffs—Flavones—Oxyketone Dye-stuffs—Quinoline and Acridine Dye-stuffs—Quinonimide or Diphenylamine Dye-stuffs—The Azine Group: Eurhodines, Safranines and Indulines—Eurhodines—Safranines—Quinoxalines—Indigo—Dye-stuffs of Unknown Constitution—Sulphur or Sulphine Dye-stuffs—Development of the Artificial Dye-stuff Industry—The Natural Dye-stuffs—Mineral Colours—Index.

**THE DYEING OF COTTON FABRICS: A Practical Handbook for the Dyer and Student.** By FRANKLIN BEECH, Practical Colourist and Chemist. 272 pp. Forty-four Illustrations of Bleaching and Dyeing Machinery. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Structure and Chemistry of the Cotton Fibre—Scouring and Bleaching of Cotton—Dyeing Machinery and Dyeing Manipulations—Principles and Practice of Cotton Dyeing—Direct Dyeing; Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Metallic Salts; Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Developers; Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Couplers; Dyeing on Tannic Mordant; Dyeing on Metallic Mordant; Production of Colour Direct upon Cotton Fibres; Dyeing Cotton by Impregnation with Dye-stuff Solution—Dyeing Union (Mixed Cotton and Wool) Fabrics—Dyeing Half Silk (Cotton-Silk, Satin) Fabrics—Operations following Dyeing—Washing, Soaping, Drying—Testing of the Colour of Dyed Fabrics—Experimental Dyeing and Comparative Dye Testing—Index.

The book contains numerous recipes for the production on Cotton Fabrics of all kinds of a great range of colours.

**THE DYEING OF WOOLLEN FABRICS.** By FRANKLIN BEECH, Practical Colourist and Chemist. Thirty-three Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 228 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

**Contents.**

The Wool Fibre—Structure, Composition and Properties—Processes Preparatory to Dyeing—Scouring and Bleaching of Wool—Dyeing Machinery and Dyeing Manipulations—Loose Wool Dyeing, Yarn Dyeing and Piece Dyeing Machinery—The Principles and Practice of Wool Dyeing—Properties of Wool Dyeing—Methods of Wool Dyeing—Groups of Dyes—Dyeing with the Direct Dyes—Dyeing with Basic Dyes—Dyeing with Acid Dyes—Dyeing with Mordant Dyes—Level Dyeing—Blacks on Wool—Reds on Wool—Mordanting of Wool—Orange Shades on Wool—Yellow Shades on Wool—Green Shades on Wool—Blue Shades on Wool—Violet Shades on Wool—Brown Shades on Wool—Mode Colours on Wool—Dyeing Union (Mixed Cotton Wool) Fabrics—Dyeing of Gloria—Operations following Dyeing—Washing, Soaping, Drying—Experimental Dyeing and Comparative Dye Testing—Testing of the Colour of Dyed Fabrics—Index.

## Bleaching and Washing.

**A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE BLEACHING OF LINEN AND COTTON YARN AND FABRICS.** By L. TAILFER, Chemical and Mechanical Engineer. Translated from the French by JOHN GEDDES McINTOSH. Demy 8vo. 303 pp. Twenty Illus. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home ; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

## Cotton Spinning and Combing.

**COTTON SPINNING (First Year).** By THOMAS THORNLEY, Spinning Master, Bolton Technical School. 160 pp. Eighty-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Second Impression. Price 3s. net. (Post free, 3s. 4d. home ; 3s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Syllabus and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—Cultivation, Classification, Ginning, Baling and Mixing of the Raw Cotton—Bale-Breakers, Mixing Lattices and Hopper Feeders—Opening and Scutching—Carding—Indexes.

**COTTON SPINNING** (Intermediate, or Second Year). By THOMAS THORNLEY. 180 pp. Seventy Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home ; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Syllabuses and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—The Combing Process—The Drawing Frame—Bobbin and Fly Frames—Mule Spinning—Ring Spinning—General Indexes.

**COTTON SPINNING** (Honours, or Third Year). By THOMAS THORNLEY. 216 pp. Seventy-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Second Edition. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home ; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

Syllabuses and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—Cotton—The Practical Manipulation of Cotton Spinning Machinery—Doubling and Winding—Reeling—Warping—Production and Costs—Main Driving—Arrangement of Machinery and Mill Planning—Waste and Waste Spinning—Indexes.

**COTTON COMBING MACHINES.** By THOS. THORNLEY, Spinning Master, Technical School, Bolton. Demy 8vo. 117 Illustrations. 300 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home ; 8s. 6d. abroad.)

**Contents.**

The Sliver Lap Machine and the Ribbon Cap Machine—General Description of the Heilmann Comber—The Cam Shaft—On the Detaching and Attaching Mechanism of the Comber—Resetting of Combers—The Erection of a Heilmann Comber—Stop Motions: Various Calculations—Various Notes and Discussions—Cotton Combing Machines of Continental Make—Index.

## Flax, Hemp and Jute Spinning.

**MODERN FLAX, HEMP AND JUTE SPINNING AND TWISTING.** A Practical Handbook for the use of Flax, Hemp and Jute Spinners, Thread, Twine and Rope Makers. By HERBERT R. CARTER, Mill Manager, Textile Expert and Engineer, Examiner in Flax Spinning to the City and Guilds of London Institute. Demy 8vo. 1907. With 92 Illustrations. 200 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 9d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

**Contents.**

**Raw Fibre.**—Origin of Flax—Hemp and Jute Fibre—Description of the Plants—Mode of Cultivation—Suitable Climate and Soil—Sowing—Harvesting—Rippling Flax and Hemp—Water Retting—Dew Retting—Extraction of the Fibre—Marketing the Fibre—Bracqing—Flax, Hemp and Jute Marks—Comparative Prices—Ports of Export—Trade Centres—Fibre Selling Conditions—Duty on Fibre—Fibre Exports. **Hackling.**—Sorting and Storing the Raw Fibre—Softening Hemp and Jute—Jute Batching—Cutting—Piecing Out—Roughing—Hackling by Hand and Machine—Tippling—Sorting—Ventilation of Hackling Rooms. **Sliver Formation.**—Spreading Line—Heavy Spreading System—Good's Combined Hackle and Spreader—Jute Breaking and Carding—Flax and Hemp Tow Carding—Bell Calculation—Clock System—Theory of Spreading. **Line and Tow Preparing.**—Drawing and Doubling—Draft Calculation—Set Calculation—Tow Combing—Compound Systems—Automatic Stop Motions and Independent Heads—Details of Preparing Machinery—Ventilation—Humidification. **Gill Spinning.**—Gill Spinning for Shoe Threads, Rope Yarns, Binder and Trawl Twines—The Automatic Gill Spinner—Rope and Reaper Yarn Numbering. **The Flax, Hemp and Jute Roving Frame.**—Bobbin Winding—Differential Motion—Twist Calculation—Practical Changing—Rove Stock. **Dry and Half-Dry Spinning.**—Flyer and Ring Frames—Draft and Twist Calculation—Bobbin Dragging—Reaches—Set of Breast Beam and Tin-rod. **Wet Spinning** of Flax, Hemp and Tow—Hot and Cold Water Spinning—Improvements in the Water Trough—Turn off and Speed of Spindles—Reaches—Belting—Band Tying—Tape Driving—Oiling—Black Threads—Cuts per Spindle—Ventilation of the Wet Spinning Room. **Yarn Department.**—Reeling—Cop Winding—Cheese and Spool Winding—Balling Shoe Thread, Reaper Yarn, etc.—Yarn Drying and Conditioning—Yarn Bundling—Yarn Baling—Weight of Yarn—Yarn Tables—Duty on Yarn Imports. **Manufacture of Threads, Twines and Cords.**—Hank Winding—Wet and Dry Twisting—Cabling—Fancy Yarns—Twine Laying—Sizing and Polishing Threads and Twines—Softening Threads—Skeining Threads—Balling Twines—Leeson's Universal Winder—Randing Twines—Spooling Sewing Threads—Comparative Prices of Flax and Hemp Cords, Lines and Threads. **Rope Making.**—Construction of Hawser and Cables—Stranding—Laying and Closing—Compound Rope Machines—Rules for Rope Makers—Weight of Ropes—Balling and Coiling Ropes. **Mechanical Department.**—Boilers, Engines and Turbines—Power Transmission by Belts and Ropes—Electric Light and Power Transmission—Fans—Oils and Oiling—Repairs—Fluting. **Mill Construction.**—Flax, Hemp and Jute Spinning Mills and Ropeworks—Heating—Roofs—Chimneys, etc.

# Collieries and Mines.

**RECOVERY WORK AFTER PIT FIRES.** By ROBERT LAMPRECHT, Mining Engineer and Manager. Translated from the German. Illustrated by Six large Plates, containing Seventy-six Illustrations. 175 pp., demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 10s. 10d. home; 11s. abroad.)

## Contents.

**Causes of Pit Fires—Preventive Regulations:** (1) The Outbreak and Rapid Extension of a Shaft Fire can be most reliably prevented by Employing little or no Combustible Material in the Construction of the Shaft; (2) Precautions for Rapidly Localising an Outbreak of Fire in the Shaft; (3) Precautions to be Adopted in case those under 1 and 2 Fail or Prove Inefficient. Precautions against Spontaneous Ignition of Coal. Precautions for Preventing Explosions of Fire-damp and Coal Dust. Employment of Electricity in Mining, particularly in Fiery Pits. Experiments on the Ignition of Fire-damp Mixtures and Clouds of Coal Dust by Electricity—**Indications of an Existing or Incipient Fire—Appliances for Working in Irrespirable Gases:** Respiratory Apparatus; Apparatus with Air Supply Pipes; Reservoir Apparatus; Oxygen Apparatus—**Extinguishing Pit Fires:** (a) Chemical Means; (b) Extinction with Water. Dragging down the Burning Masses and Packing with Clay; (c) Insulating the Seat of the Fire by Dams. Dam Building. Analyses of Fire Gases. Isolating the Seat of a Fire with Dams: Working in Irrespirable Gases ("Gas-diving"); Air-Lock Work. Complete Isolation of the Pit. Flooding a Burning Section isolated by means of Dams. Wooden Dams; Masonry Dams. Examples of Cylindrical and Dome-shaped Dams. Dam Doors: Flooding the Whole Pit—**Rescue Stations:** (a) Stations above Ground; (b) Underground Rescue Stations—**Spontaneous Ignition of Coal in Bulk—Index.**

**VENTILATION IN MINES.** By ROBERT WABNER, Mining Engineer. Translated from the German. Royal 8vo. Thirty Plates and Twenty-two Illustrations. 240 pp. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

The Causes of the Contamination of Pit Air—The Means of Preventing the Dangers resulting from the Contamination of Pit Air—Calculating the Volume of Ventilating Current necessary to free Pit Air from Contamination—Determination of the Resistance Opposed to the Passage of Air through the Pit—Laws of Resistance and Formulæ therefor—Fluctuations in the Temperament or Specific Resistance of a Pit—Means for Providing a Ventilating Current in the Pit—Mechanical Ventilation—Ventilators and Fans—Determining the Theoretical, Initial, and True (Effective) Depression of the Centrifugal Fan—New Types of Centrifugal Fan of Small Diameter and High Working Speed—Utilising the Ventilating Current to the utmost Advantage and distributing the same through the Workings—Artificially retarding the Ventilating Current—Ventilating Preliminary Workings—Blind Headings—Separate Ventilation—Supervision of Ventilation—INDEX.

**HAULAGE AND WINDING APPLIANCES USED IN MINES.** By CARL VOLK. Translated from the German. Royal 8vo. With Six Plates and 148 Illustrations. 150 pp. Price 8s. 6d. net. (Post free, 9s. home; 9s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Haulage Appliances—Ropes—Haulage Tubs and Tracks—Cages and Winding Appliances—Winding Engines for Vertical Shafts—Winding without Ropes—Haulage in Levels and Inclines—The Working of Underground Engines—Machinery for Downhill Haulage.

# Dental Metallurgy.

**DENTAL METALLURGY: MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND DENTISTS.** By A. B. GRIFFITHS, Ph.D. Demy 8vo. Thirty-six Illustrations. 200 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

Introduction—Physical Properties of the Metals—Action of Certain Agents on Metals—Alloys—Action of Oral Bacteria on Alloys—Theory and Varieties of Blowpipes—Fluxes—Furnaces and Appliances—Heat and Temperature—Gold—Mercury—Silver—Iron—Copper—Zinc—Magnesium—Cadmium—Tin—Lead—Aluminium—Antimony—Bismuth—Palladium—Platinum—Iridium—Nickel—Practical Work—Weights and Measures.

# Engineering, Smoke Prevention and Metallurgy.

**THE PREVENTION OF SMOKE.** Combined with the Economical Combustion of Fuel. By W. C. POPPLEWELL, M.Sc., A.M.Inst., C.E., Consulting Engineer. Forty-six Illustrations. 190 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Fuel and Combustion—Hand Firing in Boiler Furnaces—Stoking by Mechanical Means—Powdered Fuel—Gaseous Fuel—Efficiency and Smoke Tests of Boilers—Some Standard Smoke Trials—The Legal Aspect of the Smoke Question—The Best Means to be adopted for the Prevention of Smoke—Index.

**GAS AND COAL DUST FIRING.** A Critical Review of the Various Appliances Patented in Germany for this purpose since 1885. By ALBERT PÜTSCH. 130 pp. Demy 8vo. Translated from the German. With 103 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

## Contents.

Generators—Generators Employing Steam—Stirring and Feed Regulating Appliances—Direct Generators—Burners—Regenerators and Recuperators—Glass Smelting Furnaces—Metallurgical Furnaces—Pottery Furnace—Coal Dust Firing—Index.

**THE HARDENING AND TEMPERING OF STEEL IN THEORY AND PRACTICE.** By FRIDOLIN REISER. Translated from the German of the Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 120 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 4d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Steel—Chemical and Physical Properties of Steel, and their Casual Connection—Classification of Steel according to Use—Testing the Quality of Steel—Steel-Hardening—Investigation of the Causes of Failure in Hardening—Regeneration of Steel Spoilt in the Furnace—Welding Steel—Index.

**SIDEROLOGY: THE SCIENCE OF IRON** (The Constitution of Iron Alloys and Slags). Translated from German of HANNS FREIHERR V. JÜPTNER. 350 pp. Demy 8vo. Eleven Plates and Ten Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

The Theory of Solution.—Solutions—Molten Alloys—Varieties of Solutions—Osmotic Pressure—Relation between Osmotic Pressure and other Properties of Solutions—Osmotic Pressure and Molecular Weight of the Dissolved Substance—Solutions of Gases—Solid Solutions—Solubility—Diffusion—Electrical Conductivity—Constitution of Electrolytes and Metals—Thermal Expansion. **Micrography.**—Microstructure—The Micrographic Constituents of Iron—Relation between Micrographical Composition, Carbon-Content, and Thermal Treatment of Iron Alloys—The Microstructure of Slags. **Chemical Composition of the Alloys of Iron.**—Constituents of Iron Alloys—Carbon—Constituents of the Iron Alloys, Carbon—Opinions and Researches on Combined Carbon—Opinions and Researches on Combined Carbon—Applying the Curves of Solution deduced from the Curves of Recalescence to the Determination of the Chemical Composition of the Carbon present in Iron Alloys—The Constituents of Iron—Iron—The Constituents of Iron Alloys—Manganese—Remaining Constituents of Iron Alloys—A Silicon—Gases. **The Chemical Composition of Slag.**—Silicate Slags—Calculating the Composition of Silicate Slags—Phosphate Slags—Oxide Slags—Appendix—Index.

**EVAPORATING, CONDENSING AND COOLING APPARATUS.** Explanations, Formulæ and Tables for Use in Practice. By E. HAUSBRAND, Engineer. Translated by A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). With Twenty-one Illustrations and Seventy-six Tables. 400 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents of "Evaporating, Condensing and Cooling Apparatus".

ReCoefficient of Transmission of Heat,  $k$ , and the Mean Temperature Difference,  $\theta_m$ —Parallel and Opposite Currents—Apparatus for Heating with Direct Fire—The Injection of Saturated Steam—Superheated Steam—Evaporation by Means of Hot Liquids—The Transference of Heat in General, and Transference by means of Saturated Steam in Particular—The Transference of Heat from Saturated Steam in Pipes (Coils) and Double Bottoms—Evaporation in a Vacuum—The Multiple-effect Evaporator—Multiple-effect Evaporators from which Extra Steam is Taken—The Weight of Water which must be Evaporated from 100 Kilos. of Liquor in order its Original Percentage of Dry Materials from 1-25 per cent. up to 20-70 per cent.—The Relative Proportion of the Heating Surfaces in the Elements of the Multiple Evaporator and their Actual Dimensions—The Pressure Exerted by Currents of Steam and Gas upon Floating Drops of Water—The Motion of Floating Drops of Water upon which Press Currents of Steam—The Splashing of Evaporating Liquids—The Diameter of Pipes for Steam, Alcohol, Vapour and Air—The Diameter of Water Pipes—The Loss of Heat from Apparatus and Pipes to the Surrounding Air, and Means for Preventing the Loss—Condensers—Heating Liquids by Means of Steam—The Cooling of Liquids—The Volumes to be Exhausted from Condensers by the Air-pumps—A Few Remarks on Air-pumps and the Vacua they Produce—The Volumetric Efficiency of Air-pumps—The Volumes of Air which must be Exhausted from a Vessel in order to Reduce its Original Pressure to a Certain Lower Pressure—Index.

## Sanitary Plumbing, Metal Work, etc., etc.

**EXTERNAL PLUMBING WORK.** A Treatise on Lead Work for Roofs. By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. 180 Illustrations. 272 pp. Demy 8vo. Second Edition Revised. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Cast Sheet Lead—Milled Sheet Lead—Roof Cesspools—Socket Pipes—Drips—Gutters—Gutters (continued)—Breaks—Circular Breaks—Flats—Flats (continued)—Rolls on Flats—Roll Ends—Roll Intersections—Seam Rolls—Seam Rolls (continued)—Tack Fixings—Step Flashings—Step Flashings (continued)—Secret Gutters—Soakers—Hip and Valley Soakers—Dormer Windows—Dormer Windows (continued)—Dormer Tops—Internal Dormers—Skylights—Hips and Ridging—Hips and Ridging (continued)—Fixings for Hips and Ridging—Ornamental Ridging—Ornamental Curb Rolls—Curb Rolls—Cornices—Towers and Finials—Towers and Finials (continued)—Towers and Finials (continued)—Domes—Domes (continued)—Ornamental Lead Work—Rain Water Heads—Rain Water Heads (continued)—Rain Water Heads (continued).

**HINTS TO PLUMBERS ON JOINT WIPING, PIPE BENDING AND LEAD BURNING.** Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. 184 Illustrations. 313 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home ; 8s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Pipe Bending—Pipe Bending (continued)—Pipe Bending (continued)—Square Pipe Bendings—Half-circular Elbows—Curved Bends on Square Pipe—Bossed Bends—Curved Plinth Bends—Rain-water Shoes on Square Pipe—Curved and Angle Bends—Square Pipe Fixings—Joint-wiping—Substitutes for Wiped Joints—Preparing Wiped Joints—Joint Fixings—Plumbing Irons—Joint Fixings—Use of "Touch" in Soldering—Underhand Joints—Blown and Copper Bit Joints—Branch Joints—Branch Joints (continued)—Block Joints—Block Joints (continued)—Block Fixings—Astragal Joints—Pipe Fixings—Large Branch Joints—Large Underhand Joints—Solders—Autogenous Soldering or Lead Burning—Index.

**SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE.** By JOHN W. HART. Demy 8vo. With 208 Illustrations. 250 pp. 1904. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home ; 8s. abroad.)

### Contents.

Sanitary Surveys—Drain Testing—Drain Testing with Smoke—Testing Drains with Water—Drain Plugs for Testing—Sanitary Defects—Closets—Baths and Lavatories—House Drains—Manholes—Iron Soil Pipes—Lead Soil Pipes—Ventilating Pipes—Water-closets—Flushing Cisterns—Baths—Bath Fittings—Lavatories—Lavatory Fittings—Sinks—Waste Pipes—Water Supply—Ball Valves—Town House Sanitary Arrangements—Drainage—Jointing Pipes—Accessible Drains—Iron Drains—Iron Junctions—Index.

**THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF DIPPING, BURNISHING, LACQUERING AND BRONZING BRASS WARE.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. 35 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. net. (Post free, 2s. 3d. home and abroad.)

**A HANDBOOK ON JAPANING AND ENAMELLING FOR CYCLES, BEDSTEADS, TINWARE, ETC.** By WILLIAM NORMAN BROWN. 52 pp. and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. net. (Post free, 2s. 3d. home and abroad.)

**THE PRINCIPLES OF HOT WATER SUPPLY.** By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. With 129 Illustrations. 177 pp., demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. abroad.)

#### Contents.

Water Circulation—The Tank System—Pipes and Joints—The Cylinder System—Boilers for the Cylinder System—The Cylinder System—The Combined Tank and Cylinder System—Combined Independent and Kitchen Boiler—Combined Cylinder and Tank System with Duplicate Boilers—Indirect Heating and Boiler Explosions—Pipe Boilers—Safety Valves—Safety Valves—The American System—Heating Water by Steam—Steam Kettles and Jets—Heating Power of Steam—Covering for Hot Water Pipes—Index.

## House Decorating and Painting.

**THREE HUNDRED SHADES FOR DECORATORS AND HOW TO MIX THEM.** By A. DESAINT. Quarto. The book will consist of a wide range of shades and tints suitable for decorators carefully numbered and mounted for easy reference, with full particulars as to the composition of each shade.

*[In the press.]*

**HOUSE DECORATING AND PAINTING.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Eighty-eight Illustrations. 150 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d. net. (Post free, 3s. 9d. home and abroad.)

**A HISTORY OF DECORATIVE ART.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Thirty-nine Illustrations. 96 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home and abroad.)

**WORKSHOP WRINKLES for Decorators, Painters, Paper-hangers and Others.** By W. N. BROWN. Crown 8vo. 128 pp. Second Edition. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home; 2s. 10d. abroad.)

## Brewing and Botanical.

**HOPS IN THEIR BOTANICAL, AGRICULTURAL AND TECHNICAL ASPECT, AND AS AN ARTICLE OF COMMERCE.** By EMMANUEL GROSS, Professor at the Higher Agricultural College, Tetschen-Liebwerd. Translated from the German. Seventy-eight Illustrations. 340 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 13s. 6d. abroad.)

#### Contents.

HISTORY OF THE HOP—THE HOP PLANT—Introductory—The Roots—The Stem—and Leaves—Inflorescence and Flower: Inflorescence and Flower of the Male Hop; Inflorescence and Flower of the Female Hop—The Fruit and its Glandular Structure: The



Fruit and Seed—Propagation and Selection of the Hop—Varieties of the Hop: (a) Red Hops; (b) Green Hops; (c) Pale Green Hops—Classification according to the Period of Ripening: Early August Hops; Medium Early Hops; Late Hops—Injuries to Growth—Leaves Turning Yellow, Summer or Sunbrand, Cones Dropping Off, Honey Dew, Damage from Wind, Hail and Rain; Vegetable Enemies of the Hop: Animal Enemies of the Hop—Beneficial Insects on Hops—CULTIVATION—The Requirements of the Hop in Respect of Climate, Soil and Situation: Climate; Soil; Situation—Selection of Variety and Cuttings—Planting a Hop Garden: Drainage; Preparing the Ground; Marking-out for Planting; Planting; Cultivation and Cropping of the Hop Garden in the First Year—Work to be Performed Annually in the Hop Garden: Working the Ground; Cutting; The Non-cutting System; The Proper Performance of the Operation of Cutting: Method of Cutting: Close Cutting, Ordinary Cutting, The Long Cut, The Topping Cut; Proper Season for Cutting: Autumn Cutting, Spring Cutting; Manuring; Training the Hop Plant: Poled Gardens, Frame Training; Principal Types of Frames; Pruning, Cropping, Topping, and Leaf Stripping the Hop Plant; Picking, Drying and Bagging—Principal and Subsidiary Utilisation of Hops and Hop Gardens—Life of a Hop Garden; Subsequent Cropping—Cost of Production, Yield and Selling Prices.

**Preservation and Storage**—Physical and Chemical Structure of the Hop Cone—Judging the Value of Hops.

**Statistics of Production—The Hop Trade—Index.**

## Timber and Wood Waste.

**TIMBER:** A Comprehensive Study of Wood in all its Aspects (Commercial and Botanical), showing the Different Applications and Uses of Timber in Various Trades, etc. Translated from the French of PAUL CHARPENTIER. Royal 8vo. 437 pp. 178 Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d. net. (Post free, 13s. home; 14s. abroad.)

### Contents.

**Physical and Chemical Properties of Timber**—Composition of the Vegetable Bodies—Chief Elements—M. Fremy's Researches—Elementary Organs of Plants and especially of Forests—Different Parts of Wood Anatomically and Chemically Considered—General Properties of Wood—Description of the Different Kinds of Wood—Principal Essences with Caducous Leaves—Coniferous Resinous Trees—Division of the Useful Varieties of Timber in the Different Countries of the Globe—European Timber—African Timber—Asiatic Timber—American Timber—Timber of Oceania—Forests—General Notes as to Forests; their Influence—Opinions as to Sylviculture—Improvement of Forests—Unwooding and Rewooding—Preservation of Forests—Exploitation of Forests—Damage caused to Forests—Different Alterations—The Preservation of Timber—Generalities—Causes and Progress of Deterioration—History of Different Proposed Processes—Dessication—Superficial Carbonisation of Timber—Processes by Immersion—Generalities as to Antiseptics Employed—Injection Processes in Closed Vessels—The Boucherie System, Based upon the Displacement of the Sap—Processes for Making Timber Uninflammable—Applications of Timber—Generalities—Working Timber—Paving—Timber for Mines—Railway Traverses—Accessory Products—Gums—Works of M. Fremy—Resins—Barks—Tan—Application of Cork—The Application of Wood to Art and Dyeing—Different Applications of Wood—Hard Wood—Distillation of Wood—Pyrolygneous Acid—Oil of Wood—Distillation of Resins—Index.

**THE UTILISATION OF WOOD WASTE.** Translated from the German of ERNST HUBBARD. Crown 8vo. 192 pp. Fifty Illustrations. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

General Remarks on the Utilisation of Sawdust—Employment of Sawdust as Fuel, with and without Simultaneous Recovery of Charcoal and the Products of Distillation—Manufacture of Oxalic Acid from Sawdust—Process with Soda Lye; Thorn's Process; Bohlig's Process—Manufacture of Spirit (Ethyl Alcohol) from Wood Waste—Patent Dyes (Organic Sulphides, Sulphur Dyes, or Mercapto Dyes)—Artificial Wood and Plastic Compositions from Sawdust—Production of Artificial Wood Compositions for Moulded Decorations—Employment of Sawdust for Blasting Powders and Gunpowders—Employment of Sawdust for Briquettes—Employment of Sawdust in the Ceramic Industry and as an Addition to Mortar—Manufacture of Paper Pulp from Wood—Casks—Various Applications of Sawdust and Wood Refuse—Calcium Carbide—Manure—Wood Mosaic Plaques—Bottle Stoppers—Parquetry—Fire-lighters—Carborundum—The Production of Wood Wool—Bark—Index.

# Building and Architecture.

## **THE PREVENTION OF DAMPNES IN BUILDINGS ;**

with Remarks on the Causes, Nature and Effects of Saline, Efflorescences and Dry-rot, for Architects, Builders, Overseers, Plasterers, Painters and House Owners. By ADOLF WILHELM KEIM. Translated from the German of the second revised Edition by M. J. SALTER, F.I.C., F.C.S. Eight Coloured Plates and Thirteen Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 115 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home ; 5s. 4d. abroad.)

### **Contents.**

The Various Causes of Dampness and Decay of the Masonry of Buildings, and the Structural and Hygienic Evils of the Same—Precautionary Measures during Building against Dampness and Efflorescence—Methods of Remedying Dampness and Efflorescences in the Walls of Old Buildings—The Artificial Drying of New Houses, as well as Old Damp Dwellings, and the Theory of the Hardening of Mortar—New, Certain and Permanently Efficient Methods for Drying Old Damp Walls and Dwellings—The Cause and Origin of Dry-rot: its Injurious Effect on Health, its Destructive Action on Buildings, and its Successful Repression—Methods of Preventing Dry-rot to be Adopted During Construction—Old Methods of Preventing Dry-rot—Recent and More Efficient Remedies for Dry-rot—Index.

## **HANDBOOK OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN ARCHITECTURE AND BUILDING, AND THEIR ALLIED TRADES AND SUBJECTS.**

By AUGUSTINE C. PASSMORE. Demy 8vo. 380 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 8s. home ; 8s. 6d. abroad.)

# Foods and Sweetmeats.

## **THE MANUFACTURE OF PRESERVED FOODS AND SWEETMEATS.**

By A. HAUSNER. With Twenty-eight Illustrations. Translated from the German of the third enlarged Edition. Crown 8vo. 225 pp. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 9d. home ; 7s. 10d. abroad.)

### **Contents.**

The Manufacture of Conserves—Introduction—The Causes of the Putrefaction of Food—The Chemical Composition of Foods—The Products of Decomposition—The Causes of Fermentation and Putrefaction—Preservative Bodies—The Various Methods of Preserving Food—The Preservation of Animal Food—Preserving Meat by Means of Ice—The Preservation of Meat by Charcoal—Preservation of Meat by Drying—The Preservation of Meat by the Exclusion of Air—The Appert Method—Preserving Flesh by Smoking—Quick Smoking—Preserving Meat with Salt—Quick Salting by Air Pressure—Quick Salting by Liquid Pressure—Gamgee's Method of Preserving Meat—The Preservation of Eggs—Preservation of White and Yolk of Egg—Milk Preservation—Condensed Milk—The Preservation of Fat—Manufacture of Soup Tablets—Meat Biscuits—Extract of Beef—The Preservation of Vegetable Foods in General—Compressing Vegetables—Preservation of Vegetables by Appert's Method—The Preservation of Fruit—Preservation of Fruit by Storage—The Preservation of Fruit by Drying—Drying Fruit by Artificial Heat—Roasting Fruit—The Preservation of Fruit with Sugar—Boiled Preserved Fruit—The Preservation of Fruit in Spirit, Acetic Acid or Glycerine—Preservation of Fruit without Boiling—Jam Manufacture—The Manufacture of Fruit Jellies—The Making of Gelatine Jellies—The Manufacture of "Sulzen"—The Preservation of Fermented Beverages—The Manufacture of Candies—Introduction—The Manufacture of Candied Fruit—The Manufacture of Boiled Sugar and Caramel—The Candying of Fruit—Caramelised Fruit—The Manufacture of Sugar Sticks, or Barley Sugar—Bonbon Making—Fruit Drops—The Manufacture of Dragées—The Machinery and Appliances used in Candy Manufacture—Dyeing Candies and Bonbons—Essential Oils used in Candy Making—Fruit Essences—The Manufacture of Filled Bonbons, Liqueur Bonbons and Stamped Lozenges—Recipes for Jams and Jellies—Recipes for Bonbon Making—Dragées—Appendix—Index.

# Dyeing Fancy Goods.

**THE ART OF DYEING AND STAINING MARBLE, ARTIFICIAL STONE, BONE, HORN, IVORY AND WOOD, AND OF IMITATING ALL SORTS OF WOOD.** A Practical Handbook for the Use of Joiners, Turners, Manufacturers of Fancy Goods, Stick and Umbrella Makers, Comb Makers, etc. Translated from the German of D. H. SOXHLET, Technical Chemist. Crown 8vo. 168 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 3d. home; 5s. 4d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Mordants and Stains—Natural Dyes—Artificial Pigments—Coal Tar Dyes—Staining Marble and Artificial Stone—Dyeing, Bleaching and Imitation of Bone, Horn and Ivory—Imitation of Tortoiseshell for Combs: Yellows, Dyeing Nuts—Ivory—Wood Dyeing—Imitation of Mahogany: Dark Walnut, Oak, Birch-Bark, Elder-Marquetry, Walnut, Walnut-Marquetry, Mahogany, Spanish Mahogany, Palisander and Rose Wood, Tortoiseshell, Oak, Ebony, Pear Tree—Black Dyeing Processes with Penetrating Colours—Varnishes and Polishes: English Furniture Polish, Vienna Furniture Polish, Amber Varnish, Copal Varnish, Composition for Preserving Furniture—Index.

# Celluloid.

**CELLULOID.** The Raw Material, Manufacture and Uses. By Dr. FR. BÖCKMANN. 49 Illus. Crown 8vo. *[In the Press.]*

# Lithography, Printing and Engraving.

**PRACTICAL LITHOGRAPHY.** By ALFRED SEYMOUR. Demy 8vo. With Frontispiece and 33 Illus. 120 pp. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Stones—Transfer Inks—Transfer Papers—Transfer Printing—Litho Press—Press Work—Machine Printing—Colour Printing—Substitutes for Lithographic Stones—Tin Plate Printing and Decoration—Photo-Lithography.

**PRINTERS' AND STATIONERS' READY RECKONER AND COMPENDIUM.** Compiled by VICTOR GRAHAM. Crown 8vo. 112 pp. 1904. Price 3s. 6d. net. (Post free, 3s. 9d. home; 3s. 10d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Price of Paper per Sheet, Quire, Ream and Lb.—Cost of 100 to 1000 Sheets at various Sizes and Prices per Ream—Cost of Cards—Quantity Table—Sizes and Weights of Paper, Cards, etc.—Notes on Account Books—Discount Tables—Sizes of spaces—Leads to a lb.—Dictionary—Measure for Bookwork—Correcting Proofs, etc.

**ENGRAVING FOR ILLUSTRATION. HISTORICAL AND PRACTICAL NOTES.** By J. KIRKBRIDE. 72 pp. Two Plates and 6 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. 6d. net. (Post free, 2s. 9d. home; 2s. 10d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Its Inception—Wood Engraving—Metal Engraving—Engraving in England—Etching—Mezzotint—Photo-Process Engraving—The Engraver's Task—Appreciative Criticism—Index.

# Bookbinding.

**PRACTICAL BOOKBINDING.** By PAUL ADAM. Translated from the German. Crown 8vo. 180 pp. 127 Illustrations. Price 5s. net. (Post free, 5s. 4d. home; 5s. 6d. abroad.)

## Contents.

Materials for Sewing and Pasting—Materials for Covering the Book—Materials for Decorating and Finishing—Tools—General Preparatory Work—Sewing—Forwarding,

Cutting, Rounding and Backing—Forwarding, Decoration of Edges and Headbanding—Boarding—Preparing the Cover—Work with the Blocking Press—Treatment of Sewn Books, Fastening in Covers, and Finishing Off—Handtooling and Other Decoration—Account Books—School Books, Mounting Maps, Drawings, etc.—Index.

## Sugar Refining.

**THE TECHNOLOGY OF SUGAR:** Practical Treatise on the Modern Methods of Manufacture of Sugar from the Sugar Cane and Sugar Beet. By JOHN GEDDES McINTOSH. Second Revised and Enlarged Edition. Demy 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 436 pp. Seventy-six Tables. 1906. Price 10s. 6d. net. (Post free, 11s. home; 11s. 6d. abroad.)

### Contents.

Chemistry of Sucrose, Lactose, Maltose, Glucose, Invert Sugar, etc.—Purchase and Analysis of Beets—Treatment of Beets—Diffusion—Filtration—Concentration—Evaporation—**Sugar Cane:** Cultivation—Milling—Diffusion—Sugar Refining—Analysis of Raw Sugars—Chemistry of Molasses, etc.

(See "*Evaporating, Condensing, etc., Apparatus*," p. 26.)

## Bibliography.

**CLASSIFIED GUIDE TO TECHNICAL AND COMMERCIAL BOOKS.** Compiled by EDGAR GREENWOOD. Demy 8vo. 224 pp. 1904. Being a Subject-list of the Principal British and American Books in print; giving Title, Author, Size, Date, Publisher and Price. Price 7s. 6d. net. (Post free, 7s. 10d. home; 8s. 3d. abroad.)

**THE TECHNICAL BOOKS** in this Catalogue can be obtained through all Booksellers, or post free direct from the Publishers by remitting the amount given in brackets.

**Full Particulars of Contents** of any of the above books will be sent on application.

**Books in the Press.**—The Publishers will send Contents and prices of books in the press as soon as ready to any one sending their address.

**Technical Books** upon **all Subjects** can be obtained through SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON, if requirements are fully stated.

# SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON,

Technical Book Publishers,

8 BROADWAY, LUDGATE HILL,

LONDON, E.C.

Telegraphic Address, "Printeries, London".

[April, 1907.]

Dyer's Materials. P. Heermann

D. Van Nostrand Co. New York City.

Examination of Water.

By Mason

John Wiley & Sons.

New York City.

Gill's Oil Analysis.



SPEC.COLL TS1449.H88 1904  
Hurst, George H.  
Textile soaps and oils

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARY  
SMTI LIBRARY

